# UPDATING THE SYMMETRIC INDEFINITE FACTORIZATION WITH APPLICATIONS IN A MODIFIED NEWTON'S METHOD

by

Danny C. Sorensen



ARGONNE NATIONAL LABORATORY, ARGONNE, ILLINOIS
Prepared for the U. S. ENERGY RESEARCH
AND DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION
under Contract W-31-109-Eng-38

The facilities of Argonne National Laboratory are owned by the United States Government. Under the terms of a contract (W-31-109-Eng-38) between the U. S. Energy Research and Development Administration, Argonne Universities Association and The University of Chicago, the University employs the staff and operates the Laboratory in accordance with policies and programs formulated, approved and reviewed by the Association.

#### MEMBERS OF ARGONNE UNIVERSITIES ASSOCIATION

The University of Arizona
Carnegie-Mellon University
Case Western Reserve University
The University of Chicago
University of Cincinnati
Illinois Institute of Technology
University of Illinois
Indiana University
Iowa State University
The University of Iowa

Kansas State University
The University of Kansas
Loyola University
Marquette University
Michigan State University
The University of Michigan
University of Minnesota
University of Missouri
Northwestern University
University of Notre Dame

The Ohio State University
Ohio University
The Pennsylvania State University
Purdue University
Saint Louis University
Southern Illinois University
The University of Texas at Austin
Washington University
Wayne State University
The University of Wisconsin

#### -NOTICE-

This report was prepared as an account of work sponsored by the United States Government. Neither the United States nor the United States Energy Research and Development Administration, nor any of their employees, nor any of their contractors, subcontractors, or their employees, makes any warranty, express or implied, or assumes any legal liability or responsibility for the accuracy, completeness or usefulness of any information, apparatus, product or process disclosed, or represents that its use would not infringe privately-owned rights. Mention of commercial products, their manufacturers, or their suppliers in this publication does not imply or connote approval or disapproval of the product by Argonne National Laboratory or the U. S. Energy Research and Development Administration.

Printed in the United States of America
Available from
National Technical Information Service
U. S. Department of Commerce
5285 Port Royal Road
Springfield, Virginia 22161
Price: Printed Copy \$6.75; Microfiche \$3.00

ANL-77-49

ARGONNE NATIONAL LABORATORY 9700 South Cass Avenue Argonne, Illinois 60439

UPDATING THE SYMMETRIC INDEFINITE FACTORIZATION WITH APPLICATIONS IN A MODIFIED NEWTON'S METHOD

bу

Danny C. Sorensen

Applied Mathematics Division

Based on a thesis prepared for the degree Doctor of Philosophy in Mathematics from the University of California, San Diego

June 1977

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

	TRADE 01 CONCESSES		I	Page
	List of Figures	•	•	5
I.	An Overview	•	•	9
	<ol> <li>Introduction</li></ol>	•	•	10 17
II.	Updating Factorizations of Symmetric Matrices		•	21
	<ol> <li>Introduction</li></ol>	•	•	24
III.	Error Analysis of the Updating Algorithm		•	55
	<ol> <li>Introduction</li></ol>	•	•	57
IV.	The Use of Directions of Negative Curvature in a Modified Newton Iteration	•	•	95
	<ol> <li>Introduction</li></ol>	•	.1	97 L00 L03 L07
V.	Computational Results		.]	L <b>21</b>
	<ol> <li>Introduction</li></ol>		. 1	121
	Appendix A1	•	•	141 153

### LIST OF FIGURES

1	Pivoting in the Updating Algorithm	9
2	A Search Along x+αs	19
3	A Search Along $x+\alpha^2s+\alpha d$	.0
4	The Curve $x+\alpha^2s+\alpha d$	.1
	LUST OF TABLES	
1	Operations Required at Step k	6
2	Results for Increasing Order	4
3	Results of a Long Range of Updates	5
4	Results of Tests with Standard Starts	2
5	Results from Using Finite Differences	3
6	Box's Function	4
7	EXP6	5
8	Gottfried's Function	6
9	Brown's Badly Scaled Problem	7

## List of Symbols

R The set of real numbers.

 $R^n$  The n-dimensional real vector space.

 $R^{m \times n}$  The space of m×n real matrices.

{ } The set of.

 $\epsilon$  Element inclusion.

Set inclusion.

 $x^{t}$ , A The transpose of a vector x or matrix A.

x y The inner product of two vectors  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .

 $\|\cdot\|$  The Euclidean norm;  $\|x\| = \sqrt{x^t x}$ 

 $\|\cdot\|_{\infty}$  The infinity norm;  $\|A\|_{\infty} = \max_{1 \le i \le n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} |a_{ij}|$ .

| • | The absolute value function.

 $sgn(\cdot)$  The algebraic sign function.

f:  $\mathcal{D} \to X$  A mapping f from a domain  $\mathcal{D}$  into the set X.

 $\vartheta_k^{}f(x)$  The first partial derivative of f at x with respect to the k-th argument.

 $\vartheta_{\mbox{ij}}f(x)$  The second partial derivative of f at  $x\in \mbox{\it R}^n$  with respect to the i-th and then the j-th argument.

 $A \Rightarrow B$  A implies B.

 $a_k \rightarrow b$   $a_k$  approaches b.

# UPDATING THE SYMMETRIC INDEFINITE FACTORIZATION WITH APPLICATIONS IN A MODIFIED NEWTON'S METHOD

bу

#### Danny C. Sorensen

#### ABSTRACT

In recent years the use of quasi-Newton methods in optimization algorithms has inspired much of the research in an area of numerical linear algebra called updating matrix factorizations. Previous research in this area has been concerned with updating the factorization of a symmetric positive definite matrix. Here, a numerical algorithm is presented for updating the Symmetric Indefinite Factorization of Bunch and Parlett. The algorithm requires only  $O(n^2)$  arithmetic operations to update the factorization of an n×n symmetric matrix when modified by a rank one matrix. An error analysis of this algorithm is given. Computational results are presented that investigate the timing and accuracy of this algorithm.

Another algorithm is presented for the unconstrained minimization of a nonlinear functional. The algorithm is a modification of Newton's method. At points where the Hessian is indefinite the search for the next iterate is conducted along a quadratic curve in the plane spanned by a direction of negative curvature and a gradient related descent direction. The stopping criteria for this search take into account the second order derivative information. The result is that the iterates are shown to converge globally to a critical point at which the Hessian is positive semidefinite. Computational results are presented which indicate that the method is promising.

#### Chapter I

#### An Overview

#### 1. Introduction

In recent years the use of matrix methods in optimization algorithms has received an increasing amount of attention. Interesting problems in numerical linear algebra have been generated by advances in optimization methods. Similarly, new approaches to optimization methods are sometimes made possible or even suggested by advances in numerical linear algebra. Here the Bunch-Parlett factorization of a symmetric indefinite matrix is used in a Newton-type method which is based on the use of directions of negative curvature. In anticipation of the extension of these ideas for use in a quasi-Newton method, we present and analyze a method for updating this matrix factorization.

In this chapter the problems which shall be considered are introduced and motivated. Chapters II and III are concerned with the updating algorithm and should be considered as a unit. On the other hand, Chapter IV is meant to be self-contained. For this reason some of the same concepts are introduced in both places. The numbering of equations is done separately in each chapter. For example, a reference within a chapter to equation (2.1) means to refer to the equation numbered (2.1) which will be found in Section 2 of that chapter. Whenever there is a cross reference between chapters it will be explicitly mentioned.

# 2. Newton-type Methods for Unconstrained Optimization

One of the major problem areas of numerical analysis is the minimization of a non-linear functional. If we denote the n-dimensional real vector space by  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and the real numbers by  $\mathbb{R}$ , the problem is:

given a domain  $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathcal{R}^n$  and a functional

$$f: \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{R}$$

find  $x* \in \mathcal{D}$  such that

$$f(x*) \leq f(x)$$

for all  $x \in \mathcal{D}$ .

Usually the task of trying to find a global minimum of f is too difficult numerically, and we must be content with finding a local minimum for f. That is, we seek

such that

$$f(x) \leq f(x*)$$

for all  $x \in N(x^*) \subset D$  where  $N(x^*)$  is some neighborhood of  $x^*$ .

Let

$$g(x) \equiv \begin{pmatrix} \partial_1 f(x) \\ \partial_2 f(x) \\ \vdots \\ \partial_n f(x) \end{pmatrix} = \nabla f(x)$$

be the gradient of f at x, and let

$$G(\mathbf{x}) \equiv \begin{cases} \partial_{11}^{f}(\mathbf{x}) & \partial_{12}^{f}(\mathbf{x}) \dots \partial_{1n}^{f}(\mathbf{x}) \\ \partial_{21}^{f}(\mathbf{x}) & \partial_{22}^{f}(\mathbf{x}) \dots \partial_{2n}^{f}(\mathbf{x}) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \partial_{n1}^{f}(\mathbf{x}) & \partial_{n2}^{f}(\mathbf{x}) \dots \partial_{nn}^{f}(\mathbf{x}) \end{cases}$$
$$= \nabla^{2}_{f}(\mathbf{x})$$

be the Hessian of f at x. For a sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}_k^{}\}$  we shall write

$$f_k = f(x_k),$$
  
 $g_k = g(x_k),$   
 $G_k = G(x_k).$ 

Assume that f has two continuous derivatives on D. Then the Hessian matrix is symmetric, and for any x,  $\bar{x} \in D$  we have

$$f(\bar{x}) = f(x) + g(x)^{t}(\bar{x}-x) + \frac{1}{2}(\bar{x}-x)^{t}G(x)(\bar{x}-x) + o(\|\bar{x}-x\|^{2}).$$

We write  $h(\varepsilon) = o(\varepsilon)$  if  $\lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \frac{h(\varepsilon)}{\varepsilon} = 0$ . Thus f is modeled well locally by the quadratic form defined by the first three terms of its Taylor expansion about x. If the Hessian G(x) is positive definite then the quadratic form

$$f(x) + g(x)^{t}(\bar{x}-x) + \frac{1}{2}(\bar{x}-x)^{t}G(x)(\bar{x}-x)$$

has a minimum at

(2.1) 
$$\bar{x} = x - G^{-1}(x)g(x)$$
.

Formula (2.1) suggests the iteration

(2.2) Given 
$$x_0 \in \mathcal{D}$$
  
for  $k=0,1,2,...$ 

$$G_k s_k = -g_k$$

$$x_{k+1} = x_k + s_k$$

This is, of course, the well known Newton's method for finding a zero of the gradient g(x). Thus Newton's method can be viewed as minimizing the local quadratic model of f and also as attempting to find a point  $x^*$  which satisfies  $g(x^*) = 0$ . This is important since

(2.3) If has a local minimum at  $x^*$  only if  $g(x^*) = 0$ .

This method has two important properties that make it a very powerful tool for the solution of unconstrained minimization problems. The first of these is the basic simplicity of the iteration (2.2). The second and most important property of Newton's method is the local quadratic rate of convergence of the iterates. Loosely stated this means that when the iterates  $\mathbf{x}_k$  of (2.2) converge to a point  $\mathbf{x}^*$  with  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}^*)$  nonsingular, then eventually the number of significant digits in the approximant  $\mathbf{x}_k$  doubles at each iteration. The more precise mathematical statement is contained in the following theorem. Before the theorem is stated it will be necessary to introduce the notion of a point of attraction. A point  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is a point of attraction for the iteration (2.2) if there is an open neighborhood  $N(\mathbf{x}^*) \subset \mathcal{D}$  such that when  $\mathbf{x}_0 \in N(\mathbf{x}^*)$ , the iterates defined by (2.2) all lie in  $\mathcal{D}$  and converge to  $\mathbf{x}^*$ . Theorem (2.1)

Assume that  $g \colon \mathcal{D} \subset \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  is continuously differentiable on an open neighborhood  $N(\mathbf{x}^*) \subset \mathcal{D}$  of a point  $\mathbf{x}^* \in \mathcal{D}$  for which  $g(\mathbf{x}^*) = 0$ , and  $G(\mathbf{x}^*)$  is nonsingular. Then  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is a point of attraction of the iteration (2.2). If, in addition, there exists a positive constant L such that  $\|G(\mathbf{x}) - G(\mathbf{x}^*)\| \leq L\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^*\|$  for all  $\mathbf{x} \in N(\mathbf{x}^*)$ , then there exists a positive constant C and a positive integer K such that k > K implies that

$$\|\mathbf{x}_{k+1} - \mathbf{x}^*\| \le C \|\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}^*\|^2$$
.

A proof of Theorem (2.1) can be found in [17, p. 312].

There are some major difficulties in implementing Newton's method in its basic form. The first of these difficulties is that there is no reason for the Hessian to be positive definite at an iterate  $\mathbf{x}_k$  which is far from a local minimum. Another difficulty is that the step  $\mathbf{s}_k$  predicted by the quadratic model at  $\mathbf{x}_k$  may be too large or too small.

These difficulties have led to several modifications of Newton's method. Many of the modifications have taken the form

(2.4) Given 
$$x_0 \in \mathcal{D}$$
for  $k=0,1,2,...$ 

$$\hat{G}_k = G_k + E_k$$

$$\hat{G}_k s_k = -g_k$$

$$x_{k+1} = x_k + \alpha_k s_k$$

The symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{E}_k$  in (2.4) is chosen to insure that  $\hat{\mathbf{G}}_k$  is positive definite. This implies that the direction  $\mathbf{s}_k$  satisfies

(2.5) 
$$g_k^t s_k < 0$$
.

Thus the directional derivative of f at  $\mathbf{x}_k$  in the direction  $\mathbf{s}_k$  is negative and the function must decrease initially in the direction  $\mathbf{s}_k$ . A direction  $\mathbf{s}_k$  that satisfies (2.5) is called a <u>descent direction</u>. Once a descent direction  $\mathbf{s}_k$  has been specified it is possible to determine a positive number  $\alpha_k$  such that  $f(\mathbf{x}_k + \alpha_k \mathbf{s}_k) < \mathbf{f}_k$ .

Of course, the particular way in which the matrix  $\boldsymbol{E}_k$  and the

scalar  $\alpha_k$  are determined are crucial in analyzing the convergence of the iteration (2.4). Some success has been achieved with iterations of type (2.4) in specifying  $E_k$ ,  $\alpha_k$  in such a way that the iterates  $\mathbf{x}_k$  are globally convergent to a critical point  $\mathbf{x}^*$  (i.e. a point  $\mathbf{x}^*$  with  $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}^*) = 0$ ). Whenever possible these algorithms reduce naturally to Newton's method so that the local quadratic rate of convergence is retained.

However, work in this area is not yet complete. In particular, no algorithm has yet been given which can guarantee global convergence to a local minimum. How can Newton's method be modified so that the resulting iterates converge globally to a local minimum for f? In attempting to answer this question, we have developed an algorithm which is different from iterations of type (2.4). This algorithm is presented and analyzed in Chapter IV. The algorithm is based more explicitly on the local quadratic model for f in that the Hessian is not modified. Instead, directions of negative curvature are used in combination with the more usual descent directions. The resulting iterates  $\{x_k\}$  are shown to be globally convergent to a point  $x^*$  such that  $g(x^*) = 0$ , and  $G(x^*)$  is positive semi-definite. Thus by basing the iteration more closely on the quadratic model we obtain an iteration which converges to a point  $x^*$  that satisfies the second order necessary conditions

(2.6) f has a local minimum at  $x^*$  only if  $g(x^*) = 0$ , and  $G(x^*)$  is positive semi-definite.

Yet another drawback to a modified Newton's method is the expense in terms of both computation and programming effort associated with calculating the Hessian at each step of the iteration (2.4).

Attempts to overcome this undesirable feature have led to a great deal

of research in a class of methods called quasi-Newton methods. These methods replace the Hessian  $\textbf{G}_k$  with an approximation  $\textbf{B}_k$  . A quasi-Newton iteration has the form

(2.7) Given 
$$x_0 \in \mathcal{D}$$
, and  $B_0$  for  $k=0,1,2,...$ 

$$\begin{vmatrix}
B_k s_k &= -g_k \\
x_{k+1} &= x_k + \alpha_k s_k \\
B_{k+1} &= B_k + U_k
\end{vmatrix}$$

In iteration (2.7)

$$U_k = U(B_k, \alpha_k s_k, g_{k+1}, g_k)$$

is usually a rank one or rank two matrix with

$$(2.8) B_{k+1} S_k = S_{k+1} - S_k.$$

Equation (2.8) is called the quasi-Newton equation. The advantage of iteration (2.7) over (2.4) is that the only new information required to obtain  $B_{k+1}$  from  $B_k$  is the calculation of the gradient  $g_{k+1}$ . The computational savings is that only n instead of  $\frac{1}{2}n^2$  scalar function evaluations are required to obtain an approximate Hessian at step k. Moreover, the task of programming the Hessian is avoided.

The price one pays for the computational savings obtained through the use of a quasi-Newton method is that the local quadratic rate of convergence that is enjoyed by iteration (2.4) is no longer guaranteed. Instead, if the iterates  $\{x_k\}$  defined by (2.7) converge to a point  $x^*$  where  $g(x^*) = 0$  and  $G(x^*)$  is nonsingular, then

(2.10) 
$$\lim_{k\to\infty} \frac{\|x_{k+1} - x^*\|}{\|x_k - x^*\|} = 0$$

under suitable restrictions on  $\{B_k\}$  and G. A sequence  $\{x_k\}$  that satisfies (2.10) is said to converge Q-superlinearly to  $x^*$ . A thorough account of iterations of type (2.7) can be found in the excellent survey by Dennis and Moré [7].

Evidently, the linear systems

$$G_k s_k = -g_k$$

that must be solved at each step are central to the implementation of these methods. Solving linear systems Ax = b using matrix factorizations costs 1/3 as much as computing  $A^{-1}$  and has been shown to be numerically more stable than computing  $A^{-1}$ . Since the linear systems arising in the context of non-linear optimization have symmetric coefficient matrices it is of great interest to obtain efficient and stable methods for factoring symmetric matrices.

The advent of quasi-Newton methods has inspired a large portion of the research in an area of numerical linear algebra called updating matrix factorizations. Since the matrix  $B_{k+1}$  in (2.7) differs from  $B_k$  by at most a rank two matrix, one might expect that the factorization of  $B_{k+1}$  could be obtained with less computational effort if the information contained in the factorization of  $B_k$  were used. This has indeed been found to be the case.

The types of quasi-Newton updating formulas that have been found to be most successful so far have satisfied

(2.11a) 
$$B_k$$
 symmetric =>  $B_{k+1}$  symmetric,

(2.11b) 
$$B_k$$
 positive definite =>  $B_{k+1}$  positive definite.

For this reason, there has been much work concerned with updating

variants of the Cholesky factorization [9,13,14] of a symmetric positive definite matrix. No algorithm has been given for maintaining and updating the factorization of a symmetric (possibly indefinite) matrix. However, there is at least one promising updating formula that does not satisfy (2.11b): Powell's symmetric form of Broyden's update [18].

#### 3. The Symmetric Indefinite Decomposition

The modified Newton method that is to be presented in Chapter IV relies heavily on the factorization of a symmetric matrix given by Bunch and Parlett [5] and later improved upon by Bunch and Kaufman [4]. One would hope that the techniques developed for the modified Newton method could be extended to a quasi-Newton method. As a step towards realizing this extension, the updating problem for the symmetric indefinite factorization has been studied. A numerical method for updating the factorization of a symmetric matrix when followed by a rank one change is presented in Chapter II. A detailed error analysis of this algorithm is given in Chapter III.

As noted above, most of the work in quasi-Newton methods has been concerned with maintaining positive definite approximations to the Hessian. Hence the work in numerical linear algebra generated by these methods has been primarily concerned with updating some form of Cholesky's method for factoring a symmetric positive definite matrix.

The factorization of Bunch and Parlett does not require that the matrix be positive definite. Given any symmetric matrix  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  this algorithm produces a permutation matrix Q, a unit lower triangular matrix M, and a block diagonal matrix D such that

$$QAQ^t = MDM^t$$
.

The diagonal blocks of D are order one or two. If we call an arithmetic operation a multiplication followed by an addition, then the number of arithmetic operations required to obtain this decomposition is  $\frac{1}{6}n^3 + O(n^2). \quad (\text{If } x = \sum_{j=1}^k a_j n^j \text{ with } a_k \neq 0 \text{ we write } x = O(n^2) \text{ and say } x$  is of order  $n^k$ .)

Another algorithm for factoring a symmetric indefinite matrix was given by Aasen [1]. In that algorithm one obtains

$$QAQ^t = LTL^t$$
,

where Q is a permutation matrix, L is unit lower triangular, and T is tridiagonal. This factorization requires  $\frac{1}{6}n^3 + O(n^2)$  arithmetic operations also.

Since these factorizations both require  $\frac{1}{6}n^3 + O(n^2)$  operations, an updating algorithm for obtaining the factorization of a symmetric matrix  $\widetilde{A} = A+U$  when the factorization of A is known should require at most  $O(n^2)$  arithmetic operations. Otherwise, there would be no computational advantage over the alternative of actually computing the matrix  $\widetilde{A}$  and factoring the result. The updating algorithm presented in Chapter II is concerned with the following problem:

Given  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ ,  $A = A^t$ ,  $z \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$ , let  $QAQ^t = MDM^t$  be the Bunch-Parlett factorization of A; let

$$\tilde{A} = A + \sigma z z^{t}$$
.

Find an algorithm to compute

$$\widetilde{Q}\widetilde{A}\widetilde{Q}^{t} = \widetilde{M}\widetilde{D}\widetilde{M}^{t}$$

which requires at most  $O(n^2)$  arithmetic operations.

This algorithm makes use of the block structure of the matrix D. We found no similar way to take advantage of the corresponding tridiagonal matrix T in Aasen's factorization. At present we do not know of an algorithm for updating the factorization of Aasen. The updating algorithm that is presented here requires between  $n^2 + O(n)$  and  $\frac{11}{6}n^2 + O(n)$  operations. The method is shown to be stable as long as the factor M is well conditioned with respect to solving linear systems. These statements are made precise in chapters II and III.

#### 4. Computational Results and Conclusions

Chapter V is concerned with presenting computational evidence in support of the theoretical work described in chapters II, III, IV. The computations were carried out at Argonne National Laboratory using an IBM 370/195. All computations were done in double-precision arithmetic.

The updating algorithm has been tested for accuracy and timing over a wide range of updating problems. We have included timings for problems of various orders. The accuracy of solutions to linear systems using the updating algorithm have been compared with solutions obtained by computing and factoring A+\sigmaz^t at each step. The results are very encouraging. They indicate that the bounds obtained in our analysis are quite pessimistic and that the algorithm does not break down even when the updating process is applied over many iterations.

The unconstrained optimization algorithm was applied to many of the standard test problems which appear in the literature. Although more work is needed to obtain an algorithm that can be recommended for general use, the initial results show this algorithm to be competitive with the algorithm of Gill and Murray [11]. In any case the underlying idea is worthy of further research. It would be of great interest if the ideas could be extended to a quasi-Newton method and to a constrained optimization algorithm.

#### Chapter II

Updating Factorizations of Symmetric Matrices

#### 1. Introduction

Methods in numerical linear algebra are usually concerned with the solution of a single linear problem. For example, a particular method might be concerned with the solution of the linear system Ax = b where  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  and  $x, b \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Yet in practice we are often faced with solving a sequence of linear problems which are closely related. For instance, we may be interested in solving a sequence of n×n linear systems

(1.1) 
$$A_{k} x_{k} = b_{k} A_{k+1} = A_{k} + U_{k}$$
  $k=1,2,...$ 

In many cases of interest  $\textbf{U}_k$  is of low rank. Often the rank of  $\textbf{U}_k$  is one or two.

Direct methods for solving the main problems of numerical linear algebra have come to rely heavily upon the use of matrix factorizations. For full matrices the price (in terms of arithmetic operations) of such factorizations is generally substantial. For instance, the relevant factorization needed to solve (1.1) requires  $O(n^3)$  arithmetic operations for each  $A_k$ . However, when  $U_k = A_{k+1} - A_k$  has low rank, one might expect that the factorization of  $A_{k+1}$  could be computed in an order of magnitude fewer operations using our knowledge of the factorization of  $A_k$ . For example, in (1.1) we would aim for algorithms which require only  $O(n^2)$  arithmetic operations.

Here we shall be concerned with factorizations used in solving

the problem (1.1) when the matrices  $A_k$  and  $U_k$  are symmetric, and where each  $U_k$  is a rank one matrix. Then (1.1) has the form

(1.2) 
$$A_{k} x_{k} = b_{k}$$

$$A_{k+1} = A_{k} + \sigma_{k} x_{k} x_{k}^{t}$$
 $k=1,2,...$ 

where each  $z_k \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\sigma_k \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $A_k = A_k^t$ . This problem arises for instance in quasi-Newton methods for optimization problems [7].

Thus we shall concern ourselves with obtaining the factorization of

$$(1.3) \qquad \tilde{A} = A + \sigma z z^{t}$$

not by forming  $\tilde{A}$  explicitly, but by using the factorization of A. Such a process is called updating a matrix factorization.

There are two important and very distinct cases:

- (i) A is positive definite,
- (ii) A is indefinite.

In case (i) A may be factored in a numerically stable way into

$$A = LDL^t$$
,

where  $L \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  is a unit lower triangular matrix, and  $D \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  is a diagonal matrix with positive diagonal elements. No pivoting is required to obtain numerical stability in the positive definite case. However, in case (ii) such a factorization may not even exist. For example consider the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
.

A numerically stable method for obtaining a factorization of A in case

(ii) is given in [5] by Bunch and Parlett, and is later revised in [4] by Bunch and Kaufman. By this method one obtains a permutation matrix Q, a lower triangular matrix M, and a block diagonal matrix D such that

$$QAQ^{t} = MDM^{t}.$$

The diagonal blocks of D are order one or two. Whenever  $D_{i+1,i} \neq 0$  then  $M_{i+1,i} = 0$ . Also,  $M_{i} = 1$  for all i.

The case in (1.3) where both A and  $\widetilde{A}$  are theoretically known to be positive definite has been studied and updating algorithms are given in [9,13,14]. The case where A and  $\widetilde{A}$  are symmetric but possibly indefinite has not been studied.

In the following sections we shall present and analyze an algorithm for computing  $\widetilde{Q}$ ,  $\widetilde{M}$ ,  $\widetilde{D}$ , when given the factorization (1.4), such that

$$\widetilde{QAQ}^{t} = \widetilde{MDM}^{t},$$

where  $\tilde{A}$  is given by (1.3). The algorithm requires between  $n^2+4n$  and  $\frac{11}{6}n^2+\frac{55}{6}n+\frac{25}{3}$  arithmetic operations and at most 2n comparisons. Here an arithmetic operation is considered to be a floating point multiplication followed by an addition. Divisions are counted as multiplications. The operation count compares favorably with the alternative of computing  $A+\sigma zz^t$  and then factoring this matrix into  $\widetilde{MDM}^t$ . This would require  $\frac{1}{2}n^2+n$  multiplications together with  $\frac{1}{2}n^2$  additions to form the new matrix. It would then require at most

$$\frac{1}{6}n^3 + \frac{3}{4}n^2 + \frac{1}{3}n$$

operations to obtain the new decomposition. Therefore, a total of at most

$$\frac{1}{6}$$
n<sup>3</sup> +  $\frac{5}{4}$ n<sup>2</sup> +  $\frac{4}{3}$ n

operations would be needed.

Thus it is advantageous to use the updating algorithm whenever  $n \geq 10$ . However, it should be emphasized that the upper bound on the number of operations required by the updating algorithm is a worst case bound. Computational results indicate that the worst case seldom occurs. Therefore, we expect that in practice the crossover number would be much smaller.

#### 2. Description of the Algorithm

We shall begin by describing a basic algorithm with no pivoting. The algorithms given in [9,14] for the positive definite case will be presented as modifications to this basic algorithm. The modifications were designed to insure numerical stability. The algorithm we present for the indefinite case is also a modification of this basic algorithm. However, it is necessarily more complicated since the pivoting must be updated.

Assume for the moment that no permutations were required to obtain

$$A = MDM^{t}$$

with M (block) unit lower triangular, and D block diagonal with one-byone or two-by-two diagonal blocks. Then we may write

$$A = \sum_{j=1}^{m} M_{j} D_{j} M_{j}^{t} ,$$

where the D are the diagonal blocks of D and the  $M_j$  are the block

columns of M. Let

$$\tilde{A} = A + \sigma z z^t$$

and let Mp = z. Denote

$$A^{(k)} = \sum_{j=k}^{m} M_{j} D_{j} M_{j}^{t}, \quad w^{(k)} = \sum_{j=k}^{m} M_{j} P_{j},$$

where  $p^{t} = (p_{1}^{t}, p_{2}^{t}, \dots, p_{m}^{t})$ .

Suppose that  $\widetilde{D}_1 \equiv D_1 + \sigma p_1 p_1^t$  is non-singular, and let  $\widetilde{D}_1 b_1 = \sigma p_1$ . Then take  $\widetilde{M}_1 = M_1 + w^{(2)} b_1^t$ . Note that only the elements below the identity part of  $M_1$  are altered;

$$\widetilde{M}_{1} = \begin{bmatrix} I \\ x \\ x \\ x \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ y \\ y \\ y \end{bmatrix} ,$$

where the x's and y's denote possibly non-zero quantities. We have that

$$(2.1) \qquad \widetilde{A} = M_{1}(D_{1} + \sigma p_{1}p_{1}^{t})M_{1}^{t} + \sigma (M_{1}p_{1}w^{(2)t} + w^{(2)}p_{1}^{t}M_{1}^{t})$$

$$+ A^{(2)} + \sigma w^{(2)}w^{(2)t}$$

$$= (M_{1} + w^{(2)}b_{1}^{t})\widetilde{D}_{1}(M_{1} + w^{(2)}b_{1}^{t})^{t}$$

$$+ \sigma (M_{1}p_{1}w^{(2)t} + w^{(2)}p_{1}^{t}M_{1}^{t})$$

$$- (M_{1}\widetilde{D}_{1}b_{1}w^{(2)t} + w^{(2)}b_{1}^{t}\widetilde{D}_{1}M_{1}^{t})$$

$$+ (\sigma - b_{1}^{t}\widetilde{D}_{1}b_{1})w^{(2)}w^{(2)t}$$

$$+ A^{(2)}$$

$$= \widetilde{M}_{1}\widetilde{D}_{1}\widetilde{M}_{1}^{t} + A^{(2)} + \sigma'w^{(2)}w^{(2)t} .$$

Observe that the matrix  $A^{(2)} + \sigma'w^{(2)}w^{(2)t}$  has the form

$$\begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 \\
0 & x
\end{bmatrix}$$

and thus we may recursively apply this procedure to obtain

$$A = \sum_{j=1}^{m} \widetilde{M}_{j} \widetilde{D}_{j} \widetilde{M}_{j}^{t}$$

as long as  $\widetilde{D}_j \equiv D_j + \sigma_j p_j p_j^t$  is non-singular for  $1 \leq j \leq m$ . This assumption on  $\widetilde{D}_j$  is theoretically always satisfied in the positive definite case. However, this cannot be guaranteed in the indefinite case. After establishing some preliminary results concerning these computations we shall discuss some of the numerical algorithms that have been proposed for the positive definite case.

Lemma (2.1). Let D and D +  $\sigma pp^{t}$  be non-singular. Then the solution to

(i) 
$$(D + \sigma pp^t)b = \sigma p$$

is given by  $b = \theta D^{-1}p$ , where  $\theta = \sigma/(1 + \sigma p^{\dagger}D^{-1}p)$ . Moreover,

(11) 
$$\det(D + \sigma pp^t) = \det D(1 + \sigma p^t D^{-1}p)$$
 and the updated  $\sigma' = \sigma - b^t D^*b$ 

is given by

(iii) 
$$\sigma' = \frac{\sigma}{1 + \sigma p^t D^{-1} p}$$
.

#### Proof:

- (i) follows by substitution,
- (ii) Sherman-Morrison formula (or direct computation),
- (iii) follows by substitution.

Thus if all the  $\widetilde{D}_j$  (for  $1 \le j \le m$ ) are non-singular we have the formula

$$\sigma_{j+1} = \frac{\sigma_j}{1 + \sigma_j p_j^t D_j^{-1} p_j} \quad \text{for} \quad 1 \le j \le m ,$$

and

$$\frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_k} = \frac{j=1}{k} \frac{\text{det } \widetilde{D}_j}{k},$$

$$\prod_{j=1}^{k} \det D_j$$

hence

$$\frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_{m+1}} = \frac{\det \widetilde{A}}{\det A}.$$

In the case that both A and  $\tilde{A}$  are positive definite, these formulas point out the necessity of maintaining  $\sigma_j$  with the same sign as  $\sigma$ . We note also that we may recursively compute  $t_j = \sigma_j^{-1}$  as follows:

(2.2) 
$$t_{j+1} = t_j + p_j^t D_j^{-1} p_j,$$

and we have the relation

(2.3) 
$$\frac{t_{j+1}}{t_j} = \frac{\det D_j}{\det D_j} .$$

When A is positive definite,  $\tilde{d}_j = \det \tilde{D}_j$ ,  $d_j = \det D_j$  and  $D = \operatorname{diag}(d_1, \dots, d_n)$ .

Now, often in practice one knows theoretically that the matrix  $\widetilde{A}$  should be positive definite when A is positive definite. In the case that  $\sigma$  is positive there is no difficulty since the recursion for the  $t_j$ 's yields an increasing sequence, and  $\widetilde{d}_j = \frac{t_{j+1}}{t_j} d_j$ . Thus the  $\widetilde{d}_j$  are all positive and  $\widetilde{d}_j \geq d_j$ . The following algorithm results for  $\sigma > 0$ :

(2.4) 
$$t_{1} = \sigma^{-1}, \quad w^{(1)} = z, \quad A = MDM^{t}$$

$$\frac{for \ i = 1 \ \underline{step} \ 1 \ \underline{until} \ n \ \underline{do}$$

$$(1) \quad p_{i} = w_{i}^{(i)}$$

$$(2) \quad t_{i+1} = t_{i} + p_{i}^{2}/d_{i}$$

$$(3) \quad \widetilde{d}_{i} = d_{i}(t_{i+1}/t_{i})$$

$$(4) \quad terminate \ if \ i = n$$

$$(5) \quad b_{i} = (p_{i}/d_{i})/t_{i+1}$$

$$(6) \quad w^{(i+1)} = w^{(i)} - p_{i}M_{i}$$

$$(7) \quad \widetilde{M}_{i} = M_{i} + b_{i}w^{(i+1)}$$

Note that the number of arithmetic operations required is  $n^2 + O(n)$ , since only i operations are needed at steps 6 and 7.

Difficulties arise when  $\sigma$  < 0 because round off error may cause a  $t_{i+1}$  to be positive, and hence  $\overset{\sim}{d}_i$  will be negative indicating that the computed  $\overset{\sim}{A}$  is not positive definite.

Two remedies have been proposed. One of these [9] is to compute the vector p such the Mp = z at the outset. It is noted that in the application to quasi-Newton methods, the vector p is often available anyway. If  $\sigma < 0$  then calculate the  $t_j$ , for  $2 \le j \le n+1$  from the formula (2.2). If one of the  $t_j$  should turn out to be positive then the  $t_j$  are recalculated using

(2.5) 
$$t_{n+1} = \varepsilon/\sigma,$$

$$t_{j} = t_{j+1} - p_{j}^{2}/d_{j}, j=n,n-1,...,1$$

where  $\varepsilon$  is the relative machine precision. These new values of  $t_i$  are then used in place of the old ones in (2.4), steps 3 through 7. The effect is to replace  $\sigma$  by  $t_1^{-1}$  which gives a problem that is close to the

original problem, and for which the computed  $\tilde{A}$  will be positive definite.

In [14] another approach is taken which yields a similar algorithm. The major differences being that  $t_{n+1}$  is set to  $\epsilon$  if some  $t_j$  is positive and a backwards recurrence formula is used to compute  $\widetilde{M}$ . Thus, in place of (2.4) steps 6 and 7, we would have

(2.6) 
$$w^{(n+1)} = 0$$

$$for i = n step -1 until 1 do$$

$$(1) w_{i}^{(i)} = p_{i}$$

$$(2) M_{i} = M_{i} + b_{i}w^{(i+1)}$$

$$(3) w^{(i)} = w^{(i+1)} + p_{i}M_{i}.$$

However, there seems to be the need for additional storage in (2.6). Note that the computation of  $w^{(i)}$  requires knowledge of M which has presumably been overwritten at step (2) of (2.6).

In [9] an error analysis of this process has been given. That analysis shows that

$$MDM^{t} = A + zz^{t} + E$$

where the elements of E have first order terms in  $\varepsilon$  which depend on the ratio  $\sqrt{d_i/d_i}$  in (2.4) step 7 is used. However, it is possible to show that

$$\widetilde{M}_{i} = M_{i}(d_{i}/\widetilde{d}_{i}) + b_{i}w^{(i)}$$

and here the error terms depend on the ratio  $\sqrt{d_i/d_i}$  which is less than 1 when  $\sigma > 0$ . In both [9] and [14] one switches to (2.7) only if the ratio  $\sqrt{d_i/d_i}$  becomes larger than some bound.

This leads us to the following algorithm which is a slight

modification of the composite t-method given in [9].

(2.8) (1) terminate 
$$\underline{if} \sigma = 0$$
; put  $t_1 = \sigma^{-1}$  and  $w^{(1)} = z$ ;

- (2) if  $\sigma > 0$  go to 6;
- (3) if p is not available solve Mp = z for p;
- (4)  $\underline{\text{for }}_{i=1,2,...,n} \underline{\text{do}}_{t_{i+1}} = t_i + p_i^2/d_i;$
- (5)  $\underline{if}$  any  $t_i \ge 0$   $\underline{then}$

## begin

$$t_{n+1} = \varepsilon/\sigma;$$
  
for i=n,n-1,...,1 do t<sub>i</sub> = t<sub>i+1</sub> - p<sub>i</sub><sup>2</sup>/d<sub>i</sub>;

end

(6) for i = 1 step 1 until n do

$$\begin{array}{l} \underline{\text{for }} i = 1 \ \underline{\text{step}} \ 1 \ \underline{\text{until}} \ n \ \underline{\text{do}} \\ \\ \underline{if} \ \sigma > 0 \ \underline{\text{then}} \ \underline{\text{begin}} \ p_i = w_i^{(i)}; \ t_{i+1} = t_i + p_i^2/d_i; \ \underline{\text{end}}; \\ \\ \theta_i = t_{i+1}/t_i; \ \widetilde{d}_i = d_i\theta_i; \\ \\ \text{terminate if } i = n \\ \\ b_i = (p_i/d_i)/t_{i+1}; \\ \\ \underline{if} \ \theta_i > 4 \ \underline{\text{then}} \\ \\ \underline{\text{begin}} \end{array}$$

$$b_{i} = (p_{i}/d_{i})/t_{i+1}$$

$$\gamma_{i} = t_{i}/t_{i+1};$$

$$\widetilde{M}_{i} = \gamma_{i}M_{i} + b_{i}w^{(i)};$$

$$w^{(i+1)} = w^{(i)} - p_{i}M_{i};$$

$$w^{(i+1)} = w^{(i)} - p_i M_i;$$
  
 $\widetilde{M}_i = M_i + b_i w^{(i+1)};$ 

end .

The situation becomes completely different when the matrices A and  $\tilde{A}$  are not assumed to be positive definite. In order to obtain a stable algorithm for solving Ax = b pivoting must be used to factor A [3,5] and we obtain

$$QAQ^t = MDM^t$$
.

Moreover, the following example shows that  $\widetilde{D}_i$  in (2.1) may be singular even though both A and  $\widetilde{A}$  are non-singular.

Let 
$$A = \begin{cases} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \end{cases}$$
 (= MDM<sup>t</sup>, where M = I and D = A),

let 
$$\sigma = \frac{1}{2}$$
,  $z = (1,-1,1)^{t}$ .  
Then  $\widetilde{D}_{1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} [1,-1] = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$  is singular but

 $\widetilde{A} = A + \sigma z z^t$  satisfies det  $\widetilde{A} = -\frac{1}{2}$ . Therefore, some pivoting strategy must be employed to avoid the breakdown of the computation (2.1). The main difficulty in updating the pivoting strategy is maintaining  $\widetilde{M}$  in triangular form.

We shall now describe the pivoting strategy given in [5] for the Bunch-Parlett factorization in some detail. This strategy will be used in a portion of the updating algorithm, so we include its description for the sake of completeness.

Given a symmetric non-singular matrix A with elements  $\mathbf{a}_{ij}$  the factorization proceeds as follows:

Let 
$$0 < \alpha < 1$$
 be fixed.  
Let  $\nu = \max_{1 \le i \le n} |a_{ij}|$  and let  $\mu = \max_{i \ne j} |a_{ij}|$ .

If  $\nu \geq \alpha\mu$ , let i be the smallest index such that  $|a_{11}| = \nu$ . Let  $Q_1$  be the identity matrix with rows 1 and i interchanged. Then the matrix  $Q_1 A Q_1^t$  has the element  $a_{11}$  in the (1,1) position. The first step of the factorization is to write

$$Q_{1}AQ_{1}^{t} = \begin{bmatrix} \delta_{1} & v^{t} \\ \hline v & A' \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v\delta_{1}^{-1} & I \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \delta_{1} & 0 \\ \hline 0 & A' - \delta_{1}^{-1} vv^{t} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v\delta_{1}^{-1} & I \end{bmatrix}^{t}.$$

Thus

$$M_1^{-1}Q_1AQ_1^tM_1^{-t} = \begin{bmatrix} \delta_1 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & A^{(2)} \end{bmatrix}$$

where  $M_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v \delta_1^{-1} & I \end{pmatrix}$ , and  $A^{(2)} = A' - \delta_1^{-1} v v^t$ . If  $v < \alpha \mu$ , let i > j indices such that  $|a_{ij}| = \mu$ . Let  $Q_1$  be the identity matrix with row i interchanged with row 2 and row j interchanged with row 1. Then the matrix  $Q_1AQ_1^t$  has the element  $a_{ij}$  in the (2,1) position. In this case the first step of the factorization is to write

$$Q_{1}AQ_{1}^{t} = \begin{pmatrix} D_{1} & V^{t} \\ \hline V & A' \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} I & O \\ VD_{1}^{-1} & I \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} D_{1} \\ \hline O & A' - VD_{1}^{-1}V^{t} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I & O \\ VD_{1}^{-1} & I \end{pmatrix}^{t}.$$

Here V is the first two columns of  $Q_1AQ_1^t$  below the (2,1) and (2,2) positions, and  $D_1$  is a two-by-two matrix. Also, det  $D_1 = a_{11}a_{11} - a_{11}^2 \le (\alpha^2 - 1)\mu^2 < 0$ . Thus

$$M_1^{-1}Q_1AQ_1^tM_1^{-t} = \begin{bmatrix} D_1 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & A^{(2)} \end{bmatrix}$$

where 
$$M_1 = \begin{bmatrix} I & 0 \\ VD_1^{-1} & I \end{bmatrix}$$
, and  $A^{(2)} = A' - VD_1^{-1}V^{\dagger}$ .

The factorization now proceeds by applying the same pivoting strategy to the reduced matrix  $A^{(2)}$ . The end result is that

$$\mathbf{M}_{k}^{-1}\mathbf{Q}_{k}\mathbf{M}_{k-1}^{-1}\mathbf{Q}_{k-1}\ \dots\ \mathbf{M}_{1}^{-1}\mathbf{Q}_{1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{Q}_{1}^{t}\mathbf{M}_{1}^{-t}\ \dots\ \mathbf{Q}_{k-1}^{t}\mathbf{M}_{k-1}^{-t}\mathbf{Q}_{k}^{t}\mathbf{M}_{k}^{-t} = \mathbf{D} \ ,$$

where D is a block diagonal matrix with  $1\times1$  or  $2\times2$  diagonal blocks. Hence,

$$A = Q_1 M_1 Q_2 M_2 \dots Q_k M_k DM_k^t Q_k^t \dots M_2^t Q_2^t M_1^t Q_1^t$$

Since  $Q_i^{-1} = Q_i^t$  for  $1 \le i \le k$  we may write

where

and

$$Q_1 M_1 Q_2 M_2 \dots Q_k M_k = Q^t \overline{M}_1 \overline{M}_2 \dots \overline{M}_k ,$$

$$Q^t = Q_1 Q_2 \dots Q_k ,$$

$$\overline{M}_i = Q_{i+1}^t Q_{i+2}^t \dots Q_k^t M_i Q_k \dots Q_{i+2}^t Q_{i+1}^t .$$

Then  $\overline{M}_{i}$  has the same form as  $M_{i}$  and thus if we take

$$M = \overline{M}_1 \overline{M}_2 \dots \overline{M}_k$$

then M is a block unit lower triangular matrix such that

$$QAQ^t = MDM^t$$
.

For fixed  $\alpha$ ,  $0 < \alpha < 1$ , the strategy just described shall be called the diagonal pivoting strategy  $S_{\alpha}$ . When  $\alpha$  is chosen to be  $(1+\sqrt{17})/8$ , the factorization is almost as stable as Gaussian elimination with complete pivoting [3,5]. A modification of this strategy, which is comparable to Gaussian elimination with partial pivoting, is given in [4]. The algorithm in [5] requires between  $\frac{1}{12}n^3 + \frac{3}{8}n^2 + \frac{1}{6}n$  and  $\frac{1}{6}n^3 + \frac{1}{2}n^2 + \frac{1}{3}n$  comparisons, while the algorithm in [4] requires at most  $n^2$ -1 comparisons.

Now, in order to establish the theorem that we shall use to construct the algorithm for updating this factorization shall need some preliminary lemmas.

Lemma (2.2). Let  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  be symmetric with eigenvalues  $\lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \cdots \leq \lambda_n$  and let  $\widetilde{A} = A + \sigma z z^t$  for some  $z \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$ . If  $\sigma > 0$  then  $\widetilde{A}$  has eigenvalues  $\widetilde{\lambda}_i$  such that

$$\lambda_1 \leq \widetilde{\lambda}_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \widetilde{\lambda}_2 \leq \cdots \leq \lambda_n \leq \widetilde{\lambda}_n$$
,

while if  $\sigma \leq 0$  then the eigenvalues of  $\overset{\sim}{A}$  can be arranged so that

$$\widetilde{\lambda}_1 \leq \lambda_1 \leq \widetilde{\lambda}_2 \leq \ldots \leq \widetilde{\lambda}_n \leq \lambda_n$$
.

Proof: [20] pp. 95-98.

Remark: In particular if A is non-singular then at most one of the  $\widetilde{\lambda}_{\mathbf{i}}$  is zero.

With Lemma (2.2) and the pivoting strategy just described we can establish

<u>Lemma (2.3)</u>. Let  $V = {I \choose V}$ , where  $I \in R^{\ell \times \ell}$  and  $V' \in R^{k \times \ell}$ . Suppose that  $D = D^t \in R^{\ell \times \ell}$  is non-singular and that  $w \in R^{k+\ell}$ ,  $\sigma \in R$ . Define

$$(2.9) C \equiv VDV^{t} + \sigma ww^{t}.$$

Then there is an  $\ell \times \ell$  permutation matrix Q such that

(2.10) 
$$\begin{pmatrix} Q & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} C \begin{pmatrix} Q^{t} & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} = \widetilde{V}\widetilde{D}\widetilde{V}^{t} + \left\{ (\mathbf{v}, \overline{\mathbf{w}}) B(\mathbf{v}, \overline{\mathbf{w}})^{t}, \right.$$

where

- (i)  $\widetilde{D}$  is a non-singular block diagonal matrix with 1×1 or 2×2 diagonal blocks,
- (ii)  $\tilde{V}$  is block unit lower trapezoidal,

(iii) 
$$v = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{v} \end{bmatrix}, \ \overline{v} \in \mathbb{R}^k,$$
  
(iv)  $\overline{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{0}{w} \end{bmatrix}, \ \overline{w} \in \mathbb{R}^k,$  and  
(v)  $B \in \mathbb{R}^{2 \times 2}.$ 

Proof: Write

(2.11) 
$$C = (V, w) \begin{pmatrix} D & 0 \\ 0 & \sigma \end{pmatrix} (V, w)^{t}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} I & 0 \\ V' & \frac{1}{\mu} w' \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \overline{D} & \mu s \\ \mu s^{t} & \mu^{2} \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I & 0 \\ V' & \frac{1}{\mu} w' \end{pmatrix}^{t}$$
where
$$w = \begin{pmatrix} w_{1} \\ w \end{pmatrix}, w_{1} \in \mathcal{R}^{\ell}, w' = w_{2} - V'w_{1},$$

$$\overline{D} = D + \sigma w_1 w_1^t,$$

and  $s = \sigma w_1$ .

Here  $\mu$  may be any positive real number; if  $\mu$  is chosen small enough then the diagonal pivoting strategy  $S_{\alpha}$  will give either

(2.12) 
$$\begin{pmatrix} Q & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \overline{D} & \mu s \\ \mu s & \mu^2 \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} Q^{t} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \overline{M} & 0 \\ \mu b^{t} & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \widetilde{D} & 0 \\ 0 & \mu^2 \sigma' \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \overline{M} & 0 \\ \mu b^{t} & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{t}$$

or

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \overline{M} & 0 & 0 \\ -\overline{t} & 1 & 0 \\ \mu b^{t} & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \overline{D} & 0 & 0 \\ \overline{D} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \delta & \mu \beta \\ 0 & 0 & \mu \beta & \mu^{2} \sigma' \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \overline{M} & 0 & 0 \\ \overline{m}^{t} & 1 & 0 \\ \mu b^{t} & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{t},$$

where D is block diagonal with  $1\times 1$  or  $2\times 2$  diagonal blocks, and  $\overline{M}$  has the corresponding block unit lower triangular structure. Since D is non-singular, Lemma (2.2) implies that  $\overline{D}$  has at most one zero eigenvalue. The diagonal pivoting strategy preserves the inertia of  $\overline{D}$ . Therefore,  $\widetilde{D}$  is non-singular. Note that  $\delta=0$  in (2.13) if and only if  $\overline{D}$  is singular and in this case we cannot carry the decomposition further without permuting the last row and column of

$$\begin{pmatrix} \overline{D} & \mu s \\ \mu s^t & \mu^2 \sigma \end{pmatrix}.$$

If (2.12) is obtained then

Here we take

$$\widetilde{V} = \begin{pmatrix} \overline{M} \\ \hat{V}M + w'b^{t} \end{pmatrix}$$
, and  $\overline{\overline{w}} = w'$ .

If (2.13) is obtained then

$$\begin{bmatrix} Q & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix} C \begin{bmatrix} Q^{t} & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} Q & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} Q^{t} & 0 \\ v'Q^{t} & \frac{1}{\mu}w' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} Q & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \overline{D} & \mu s \\ \mu s^{t} & \mu^{2}\sigma \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} Q^{t} & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} Q^{t} & 0 \\ v'Q^{t} & \frac{1}{\mu}w' \end{bmatrix}^{t} \begin{bmatrix} Q^{t} & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} I & 0 & 0 \\ \hat{v} & v & \frac{1}{\mu}w' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \overline{M} & 0 & 0 \\ m^{t} & 1 & 0 \\ \mu b^{t} & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \delta & \mu \beta \\ 0 & 0 & \mu \beta & \mu^{2}\sigma' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \overline{M} & 0 & 0 \\ m^{t} & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & b^{t} & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{t} \begin{bmatrix} I & 0 & 0 \\ \hat{v} & v & \frac{1}{\mu}w' \end{bmatrix}^{t}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} \overline{M} & 0 & 0 \\ \hat{v}\overline{M} + v\overline{m}^{t} + w'b^{t} & v & w' \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \delta & \beta \\ 0 & 0 & \delta & \beta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \overline{M} & 0 & 0 \\ \overline{M} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \delta & \beta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \overline{M} & 0 & 0 \\ \overline{V}M + v\overline{m}^{t} + w'b^{t} & v & w' \end{bmatrix}^{t}$$

where 
$$\begin{pmatrix} I & 0 \\ \hat{v} & v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} Q & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} Q^{t} \\ V^{i}O^{t} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} I \\ V^{i}O^{t} \end{pmatrix}$$
.

Here

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\bar{\mathbf{v}} \end{pmatrix}$$
, where  $\bar{\mathbf{v}} \in \mathbb{R}^k$ ,

and we take

$$\widetilde{V} = \begin{pmatrix} \overline{M} \\ \widehat{VM} + \overline{Vm}^{t} + \overline{w}^{t} b^{t} \end{pmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} \delta & \beta \\ \beta & \sigma^{t} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \overline{w} = w^{t}.$$

This gives the desired result.

Observe that the scale factor  $\mu$  does not actually enter into the

computations and thus explicit scaling need not be implemented in a code. Also, we note that for the intended application, we will have  $\ell \leq 3$  in Lemma (2.3). When  $\ell \leq 3$  we have

$$C = (V, w) \begin{pmatrix} D & 0 \\ 0 & \sigma \end{pmatrix} (V, w)^{t}$$

with D of order at most 3. Then in the computations non-singular matrices of order at most 4 are inserted between the factors on the right and permutations are used to obtain

$$\begin{pmatrix} Q & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} C \begin{pmatrix} Q^{t} & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} = (\widetilde{V}_{|V, \overline{w}}) \begin{pmatrix} \widetilde{D} & 0 \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix} (\widetilde{V}_{|V, \overline{w}})^{t} .$$

Thus, some fixed number of arithmetic operations are required to compute  $\widetilde{D}$  and B. Also, some fixed multiple of k arithmetic operations are required to compute  $\widetilde{V}$ .

Before we give the main theorem of this section we shall need to establish one more lemma. The proof of the lemma is trivial but it is included for the sake of clarity in some of the following computations.

Lemma (2.4). Let 
$$B = \begin{pmatrix} \delta & \beta \\ \beta & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{2 \times 2}$$
, where  $\beta \neq 0$ . Then
$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\gamma \\ \gamma & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \gamma \\ -\gamma & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$
,

with  $|\lambda_1| \ge |\lambda_2|$ .

<u>Proof</u>: Let  $\mu_1, \mu_2$  be the eigenvalues of B with  $|\mu_1| \ge |\mu_2|$ . Since  $\beta \neq 0$ , B has an eigenvector corresponding to  $\mu_1$  of the form  $\binom{1}{\gamma}$ . Thus

$$\left(\begin{array}{cc} \delta & \beta \\ \beta & \sigma \end{array}\right) \left(\begin{array}{c} 1 \\ \gamma \end{array}\right) = \mu_1 \left(\begin{array}{c} 1 \\ \gamma \end{array}\right).$$

Therefore,  $\delta+\beta\gamma=\mu_1$  and since  $\beta\neq 0$ 

we have  $\gamma = (\mu_1 - \delta)/\beta$ .

Since B is symmetric it has an orthonormal system of eigenvectors. Thus

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\gamma \\ \gamma & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \gamma \\ -\gamma & 1 \end{pmatrix} ,$$

where

$$\lambda_{i} = \mu_{i}/(1+\gamma^{2}), i=1,2.$$

The following theorem will show how Lemma (2.3) can be used to obtain an  $O(n^2)$  updating algorithm.

Theorem (2.1). Let  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  be non-singular with  $QAQ^t = MDM^t$ . Suppose that  $z \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}$  are such that

$$\tilde{A} = A + \sigma z z^{t}$$

is also non-singular. Then  $\widetilde{Q}\widetilde{A}\widetilde{Q}^{t}=\widetilde{M}\widetilde{D}\widetilde{M}^{t}$  can be computed from the factorization of A in  $O(n^2)$  arithmetic operations.

 $\frac{\text{Proof:}}{\widetilde{A}^{(k)}} = \sum_{j=1}^{k} \widetilde{M}_{j} \widetilde{D}_{j} \widetilde{M}_{j}^{t}, A^{(k)} = \sum_{j=k}^{m} M_{j} D_{j} M_{j}^{t}. \text{ First we may write}$ 

$$Q\widetilde{A}Q^{t} = \begin{pmatrix} I & w_{1} \\ v & w_{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} D & 0 \\ 0 & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I & w_{1} \\ v & w_{2} \end{pmatrix}^{t} + A^{(2)} \equiv C^{(1)} + A^{(2)}$$

with  $M_1 = \begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $W = \begin{pmatrix} W_1 \\ W_2 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $D = D_1$ . Then by Lemma (2.3) we may

construct a permutation  $\mathbf{U}_1$  such that

$$(2.14) \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{U}_{1} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{C}^{(1)} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{U}_{1}^{t} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{1} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \end{bmatrix}^{t} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{1} \\ \mathbf{v}_{2} \end{bmatrix} (\tilde{\delta}) \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{1} \\ \mathbf{v}_{2} \end{bmatrix}^{t} + \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{1} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{v}_{1} & \mathbf{w}^{t} \end{bmatrix}^{t} ,$$
or
$$(\mathbf{1}\mathbf{1}\mathbf{1}) \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I} \\ \mathbf{v}_{1} \end{bmatrix} \widetilde{\mathbf{D}}_{1} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I} \\ \mathbf{v}_{1} \end{bmatrix}^{t} + \sigma^{t} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{v}_{1} \end{bmatrix} (\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{w}^{t}) ,$$

where  $\widetilde{\delta} \neq 0$ ,  $\widetilde{D}_1 \in \mathbb{R}^{2 \times 2}$  is non-singular,  $B \in \mathbb{R}^{2 \times 2}$ , and  $\sigma' \in \mathbb{R}$ . Observe also that  $\begin{pmatrix} U_1 & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} A^{(2)} \begin{pmatrix} U_1^t & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} = A^{(2)}$ . If (iii) is achieved then the problem becomes

$$Q_{1}\widetilde{A}Q_{1}^{t} = \widetilde{A}^{(1)} + A^{(2)} + \sigma' \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ w' \end{pmatrix} (0, w'^{t}) ,$$
where
$$Q_{1} = \begin{pmatrix} U_{1} & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} Q. \text{ Note that}$$

$$A^{(2)} + \sigma' \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ w' \end{pmatrix} (0, w'^{t})$$

has the same form as the original problem but the dimension of the problem is decreased to n-1 or n-2.

In the following discussion we shall drop the primes and subscripts from the expressions on the right of (2.14). Also, some of the qualities appearing in (2.14) are redefined below.

If (i) holds in (2.14), then

$$Q_{1}\widetilde{A}Q_{1}^{t} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v & w \end{pmatrix} B \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v & w \end{pmatrix} + A^{(2)},$$

while if (ii) holds then

$$Q_{1}\widetilde{A}Q_{1}^{t} = \widetilde{A}^{(1)} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v & w \end{pmatrix}^{t} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v & w \end{pmatrix}^{t} + A^{(2)}.$$
Let  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ I \\ v \end{pmatrix} = M_{2}$ . Then we may write
$$Q_{1}AQ_{1}^{t} = \begin{cases} (i) & C^{(2)} + A^{(3)}, \\ or \\ (ii) & \widetilde{A}^{(1)} + C^{(2)} + A^{(3)}. \end{cases}$$

In (i) we have

(2.15) 
$$c^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \overline{v}_1 & \overline{w}_1 & I \\ \overline{v}_2 & \overline{w}_2 & V \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} B & 0 \\ 0 & D_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \overline{v}_1 & \overline{w}_1 & I \\ \overline{v}_2 & \overline{w}_2 & V \end{pmatrix},$$

and a similar expression in (ii). Here  $v = \begin{pmatrix} \bar{v}_1 \\ \bar{v}_2 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $w = \begin{pmatrix} \bar{w}_1 \\ \bar{w}_2 \end{pmatrix}$  have been partitioned so that  $V\bar{v}_1$  and  $V\bar{w}_1$  are defined.

Now if (i) or (ii) occurred in (2.14) then

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} \delta & \beta \\ \beta & \sigma \end{pmatrix}$$

satisfies  $|\delta| < \alpha |\beta|$ . Hence by Lemma (2.4)

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\gamma \\ \gamma & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \gamma \\ -\gamma & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

with  $|\lambda_1| \ge |\lambda_2|$ . Moreover,  $\lambda_1 \ne 0$  since  $\lambda_1 = 0$  implies that B = 0.

Let 
$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & w_0 \\ v_1 & w_1 \\ v_2 & w_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \overline{v}_1 & \overline{w}_1 \\ \overline{v}_2 & \overline{w}_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\gamma \\ \gamma & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Using this expression in (2.15) gives

$$(2.16) c^{(2)} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & w_0 \\ v_1 & I & w_1 \\ v_2 & V & w_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & D_2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & w_0 \\ v_1 & I & w_1 \\ v_2 & V & w_2 \end{bmatrix}^{\mathsf{t}}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & w_0 \\ 0 & I & w_1 \\ \hline \widetilde{v}_2 & V & w_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \widehat{D} & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & w_0 \\ 0 & I & w_1 \\ \hline \widetilde{v}_2 & V & w_2 \end{bmatrix}^{\mathsf{t}}$$

with  $\hat{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v_1 & I \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & v_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v_1 & I \end{pmatrix}^t$  non-singular and  $\tilde{v}_2 = v_2 - v_1$ . Now,

Lemma (2.3) may be applied to obtain

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{U}_{2} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{C}^{(2)} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{U}_{2}^{t} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I} \\ \widetilde{\mathbf{v}} \end{bmatrix} \widetilde{\mathbf{D}} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I} \\ \widetilde{\mathbf{v}} \end{bmatrix}^{t} + \begin{cases} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{1} & \mathbf{0} \\ \widetilde{\mathbf{v}}_{1} & \widetilde{\mathbf{w}} \end{bmatrix}^{t} \\ \mathbf{or} \\ \sigma' \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \widetilde{\mathbf{w}} \end{bmatrix} (\mathbf{0}, \widetilde{\mathbf{w}}^{t}) . \end{cases}$$

We take  $\widetilde{D}_1 = \widetilde{D}$  and  $\widetilde{M}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} I \\ \widetilde{v} \end{pmatrix}$ . Case (ii) of (2.14) is similar. This process may be continued until the full updated factorization has been attained.

To see that only  $O(n^2)$  operations are needed, observe that a small fixed number of arithmetic operations (bounded by b say) are required to obtain a new diagonal block. Manipulating the columns of the triangular matrix M at step k requires some fixed multiple of (n - k) arithmetic operations (bounded by a say). Thus, there are at most

$$a(n + (n-1) + ... + 1) + bn = \frac{an(n+1)}{2} + bn$$

arithmetic operations required.

We remark now that the implementation does not actually rewrite  $C^{(2)}$  as in (2.16). Instead, (2.15) is written as

$$(2.17) c^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ v_1 & I & w_1 \\ v_2 & V & w_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \delta & 0 & \beta \\ 0 & D_2 & 0 \\ \beta & 0 & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ v_1 & I & w_1 \\ v_2 & V & w_2 \end{pmatrix}^{t}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & | & 0 \\ 0 & I & | & 0 \\ \hline & v_2 & V & | & w_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \overline{D} & b \\ b^{t} & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & | & 0 \\ 0 & I & | & 0 \\ \hline & \overline{v}_2 & V & | & \overline{w}_2 \end{pmatrix}^{t},$$

$$\text{where} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} \overline{D} & b \\ b^{t} & \sigma \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ v_1 & I & w_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \delta & 0 & \beta \\ 0 & D_2 & 0 \\ \beta & 0 & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ v_1 & I & w_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{t}.$$

Multiplying the matrix factors and then equating matrix elements will show that  $\overline{D}$  in (2.17) is equal to the matrix  $\overline{D}$  appearing in expression (2.11) of Lemma (2.3) if we had first obtained (2.16) and then applied Lemma (2.3). After this form of  $C^{(2)}$  has been obtained, the factorization may proceed as described in Lemma (2.3).

We are ready now to give an Algol-like description of the implemented algorithm. Some of the details have been left out for the sake of simplicity. The most notable of these omissions is that when updating a diagonal block  $D_k$  we may obtain two 1×1 blocks instead of a 2×2. The explicit bookkeeping involved is not present in this somewhat simplified description.

In the following description of the algorithm we shall make the following conventions:

- (1) The expression a : = b means b overwrites a.
- (2) D will be a matrix of order at most 4. An expression of the form  $\hat{D} := \begin{pmatrix} \hat{D} & 0 \\ 0 & \sigma \end{pmatrix}$  will mean we have increased the size of  $\hat{D}$  with elements defined as indicated. Similar remarks will apply to the arrays  $\hat{V}$  and  $\hat{B}$ .
- (3) At step k, w will always have the form  $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \mathbf{w}_1 \\ \mathbf{w}_2 \end{bmatrix}$ , where  $\mathbf{w}_1$  has 1 or 2 components whenever  $\mathbf{D}_k$  is 1×1 or 2×2 respectively. Matrices Q and  $\mathbf{Q}_k$  are permutation matrices.

Let  $QAQ^t = \sum_{j=1}^r M_j D_j M_j^t$ ,  $\sigma$ , z be given. Let  $0 < \alpha < 1$  be fixed. The following algorithm will compute  $\widetilde{M}_j \widetilde{D}_j \widetilde{M}_j^t$  and  $\widetilde{Q}$  such that  $\widetilde{Q}(A + \sigma z z^t) \widetilde{Q}^t = \sum_{j=1}^r \widetilde{M}_j \widetilde{D}_j \widetilde{M}_j^t$ .

(1) begin

$$w := Qz; k := 1; j := 1;$$

$$\hat{D} := \begin{pmatrix} D_1 + \sigma w_1 w_1^t & \sigma w_1 \\ \sigma w_1^t & \sigma \end{pmatrix}; \quad V := M_1; \quad w := w - M_1 w_1;$$

(2) L1: comment decompose D as described in Lemma (2.3);

$$\begin{pmatrix}
Q_{k} & 0 \\
0 & 1
\end{pmatrix}
\hat{D}
\begin{pmatrix}
Q_{k}^{t} & 0 \\
0 & 1
\end{pmatrix} = \overline{M}
\begin{pmatrix}
\overline{D} & 0 \\
0 & B
\end{pmatrix}
\overline{M}^{t};$$

$$\hat{D} : = \overline{D};$$

(3) if B is  $1\times1$  then

$$\frac{\underline{\text{begin}}}{(\widetilde{M}_{k}, \mathbf{w})} := \begin{bmatrix} Q_{k} & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix} (\mathbf{V}, \mathbf{w}) \begin{bmatrix} Q_{k}^{t} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \overline{\mathbf{M}};$$

$$\sigma := \mathbf{B}; \ \widetilde{\mathbf{D}}_{k} := \widehat{\mathbf{D}};$$

$$\begin{array}{l} \ell := \text{ order of } \widetilde{D}_{kj}; \ k := k+1; \ j := j+\ell; \\ \widehat{D} := D_k + \sigma w_1 w_1^t \\ \underline{if} \ (j = n \ \underline{and} \ \widehat{D} \ is \ 1 \times 1) \ \underline{or} \ (j = n-1 \ \underline{and} \\ & |\widehat{D}_{21}|\alpha > \max(|\widehat{D}_{11}|, |\widehat{D}_{22}|)) \ \underline{then} \ \underline{go} \ \underline{to} \ \mathrm{QUIT}; \\ \widehat{D} := \begin{pmatrix} D & \sigma w_1 \\ \sigma w_1^t & \sigma \end{pmatrix}; \ w := w - M_k w_1; \ V := M_k; \\ \mathrm{Update} \ Q \ \mathrm{with} \ Q_k; \\ \mathrm{go} \ \underline{to} \ \mathrm{L1}; \end{array}$$

# (4) if B is $2\times 2$ then

end

QUIT:

end.

end;

$$\begin{array}{l} \underbrace{\operatorname{egin}}_{(M_{k},\ V,\ w)} := \begin{pmatrix} \operatorname{Q}_{k} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} (V,\ w) \begin{pmatrix} \operatorname{Q}_{k} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \overline{M}; \\ \widehat{\operatorname{D}}_{k} := \widehat{\operatorname{D}};\ \ell := \operatorname{size}(\widetilde{\operatorname{D}}_{k});\ k := k+1;\ j := j+\ell; \\ \underbrace{\operatorname{if}\ j \geq n\ \underline{\operatorname{then}}\ \underline{\operatorname{begin}}}_{k} \ \widehat{\operatorname{D}}_{k} := B_{11};\ \underline{\operatorname{go}\ \underline{\operatorname{to}}}\ \operatorname{QUIT};\ \underline{\operatorname{end}}; \\ \widehat{\operatorname{D}} := \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & 0 & B_{21} \\ 0 & D_{k} & 0 \\ B_{21} & 0 & B_{22} \end{pmatrix}; \\ (V,\ w) := (V,\ M_{k} \mid\ w) \begin{pmatrix} L^{-1} & -w_{1} \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix};\ \underline{\operatorname{comment}}\ \underline{\operatorname{where}}\ (V,\ M_{k}) = \begin{pmatrix} L \\ M' \end{pmatrix}; \\ \widehat{\operatorname{D}} := \begin{pmatrix} L & w_{1} \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \widehat{\operatorname{D}} \begin{pmatrix} L^{t} & 0 \\ w_{1}^{t} & 1 \end{pmatrix}; \\ \underline{\operatorname{go}\ \underline{\operatorname{to}}}\ \underline{\operatorname{L1}}; \end{array}$$

We refer the reader now to the brief flow diagram (Al) describing the pivoting strategy and to the program listing (A2) in the appendix. The operation count that follows refers to that particular implementation. The results of the operation count are given in Table 1.

By an  $\ell$ -step reduction we shall mean that  $\ell$  columns of  $\widetilde{M}$  and the corresponding diagonal blocks have been completely determined by the algorithm we have just described. Operations at step k which are carried out on columns of M or the vector w contribute to the  $O(n^2)$  portion of the operation count and will be referred to as operations of type-A. Operations needed to update a diagonal block will be called operations of type-B and they contribute only to the linear term in our operation count. We shall consider an operation as a multiplication and an addition; with this convention we are ignoring the important contribution of interchanges to the  $O(n^2)$  term. The paths cited refer to the flow diagram (A1) in the appendix.

Table 1 needs some explanation. The counts given under the heading "path 1" refer to a successful one-step reduction without entering paths 2 or 3 (see Al). The operation counts given for paths 2 and 3 include those cases which begin with path 1 and end in paths 2 or 3.

Table 1
Operations Required at Step k

	Path 1	Path 2	Path 3
type-A	2(n-k)	$4(n - (k+1)) \le m \le 6(n - (k+1)) + 1$	$   \begin{array}{ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
type-B	5	15 <u>&lt; m &lt;</u> 19	42
comparisons	1	4	6
reduction	1	2	3

m denotes number of operations.

The best possible situation occurs when Path 1 is taken at each step; we then have that the total operations required are

$$S = \sum_{j=1}^{n} 2(n-j) + 5(n-1)$$
$$= 2 \frac{n(n-1)}{2} + 5n$$
$$= n^{2} + 4n.$$

The worst possible case will now be considered.

Suppose

path 1 is taken for 
$$k = j_1, \dots, j_{k_1}$$
;  
path 2 is taken for  $k = \ell_1, \dots, \ell_{k_2}$ ;  
path 3 is taken for  $k = m_1, \dots, m_{k_3}$ ;  
where  $n = k_1 + 2k_2 + 3k_3$ .

The total number of operations contributing to the  $\ensuremath{\text{n}}^2$  term is then bounded by the sum S, where

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{S} &\equiv 2(\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{j}_{1} + \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{j}_{2} + \dots + \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{j}_{k_{1}}) \\ &+ 6(\mathbf{n} - (\ell_{1}+1) + \mathbf{n} - (\ell_{2}+1) + \dots + \mathbf{n} - (\ell_{k_{2}}+1)) + \mathbf{k}_{2} \\ &+ 11(\mathbf{n} - (\mathbf{m}_{1}+2) + \mathbf{n} - (\mathbf{m}_{2}+2) + \dots + \mathbf{n} - (\mathbf{m}_{k_{3}}+2)) + 2\mathbf{k}_{3} \\ &= 3(\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{j}_{1} + \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{j}_{2} + \dots + \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{j}_{k_{1}}) \\ &+ 3(\{\mathbf{n} - \ell_{1} + \mathbf{n} - (\ell_{1}+1)\} + \dots + \{\mathbf{n} - \ell_{k_{2}} + \mathbf{n} - (\ell_{k_{2}}+1)\}) \\ &+ 3(\{\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{m}_{1} + \mathbf{n} - (\mathbf{m}_{1}+1)\} + \mathbf{n} - (\mathbf{m}_{1}+2)\} + \dots \\ &+ \{\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{m}_{k_{3}} + \mathbf{n} - (\mathbf{m}_{k_{3}}+1) + \mathbf{n} - (\mathbf{m}_{k_{3}}+2)\}) - 2\mathbf{k}_{2} - 7\mathbf{k}_{3} \\ &+ 2(\mathbf{n} - (\mathbf{m}_{1}+2) + \dots + \mathbf{n} - (\mathbf{m}_{k_{3}}+2)) \\ &- (\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{j}_{1} + \dots + \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{j}_{k_{1}}) \end{split}$$

Thus

$$S = \frac{3}{2} n^2 - \frac{3}{2} n + 2k_3 n - 2 \sum_{i=1}^{k_3} m_i + \sum_{i=1}^{k_1} j_i - k_1 n - 2k_2 - 11k_3.$$

Now,

$$2k_3^{n} - 2\sum_{i=1}^{k_3} m_i \le 2k_3^{n} - 2\sum_{i=1}^{k_3} (1 + 3(i-1)) = k_3(2n-3k_3) + k_3$$

and

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k_1} j_i - k_1^n \le \sum_{j=n-k_1+1}^n j - k_1^n = -\frac{1}{2} k_1^2 + \frac{1}{2} k_1.$$

Thus

$$S \leq \frac{3}{2} n^{2} - \frac{3}{2} n + k_{3}(2n-3k_{3}-10) - \frac{1}{2} k_{1}^{2} + \frac{1}{2} k_{1} - 2k_{2}$$

$$\leq \frac{3}{2} n^{2} - \frac{3}{2} n + \frac{1}{3}(n-5)^{2}$$

$$= \frac{11}{6} n^{2} - \frac{29}{6} n + \frac{25}{3} ,$$

where we have maximized the expression  $k_3(2n-3k_3-10)$  over  $\{k_3:k_3\geq 0\}$ . The analysis is not valid unless  $n\geq 5$ .

Let us divide the counts for type-B operations by the corresponding reduction at step k. An upper bound for this number in the worst case is 14. Thus 14n is an upper bound for the number of type-B operations needed. Therefore, the worst case operation count is bounded by

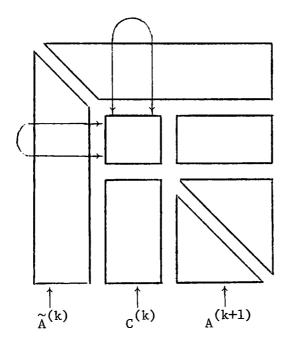
$$\frac{11}{6} n^2 - \frac{29}{6} n + \frac{25}{3} + 14n$$
$$= \frac{11}{6} n^2 + \frac{55}{6} n + \frac{25}{3}.$$

The maximum number of comparisons needed is 2n.

## 3. A Pictorial Description of the Algorithm

In the last section we gave a formal description and proof of correctness of an algorithm to update the factorization of a symmetric matrix. The main difficulty in obtaining this algorithm was updating the pivoting strategy while maintaining the triangular structure of M and  $\widetilde{M}$ .

The following diagram represents the algorithm at step k.



In Fig. 1,  $\widetilde{A}^{(k)}$  represents that portion of the factorization of  $\widetilde{A}$  obtained up to step k.  $C^{(k)}$  represents a working array that involves information from the vector w and at most three columns of M.  $A^{(k+1)}$  is that portion of the factorization of A which has not yet been considered. From this diagram we see that the pivoting effects neither the triangular structure of  $\widetilde{M}$  that has already been computed nor the triangular structure of that portion of M which has not yet been

considered.

One can also represent the operations on the elements in a diagram. In the following, d's will represent elements of the diagonal blocks  $D_k$  of D, m's will represent elements of the  $M_j$ 's which occur below the block diagonal of identity matrices in the matrix M, and w's will represent elements of the vector w = Qz. Let  $\sigma$  and  $A^{(k)}$  be as in Section 2, and we assume that  $A^{(k)}$  is in factored form, so only the lower triangle and diagonal D need be stored. A "~" over an element means that some operation has altered this element. If a D appears then that element has been "zeroed out" and is not subject to further alteration.

Only those elements that need to be stored are represented; the elements known by definition are left blank; we store the diagonal matrix D in place of the identity matrices in M. Row permutations are denoted by or ; column permutations are denoted by . The permutation matrices Q are not explicitly represented.

We shall illustrate the algorithm with a  $5\times5$  example.

## Case 1:

D<sub>1</sub> is 1×1,
$$\widetilde{A} = \begin{bmatrix} \widetilde{d} \\ m \\ m \\ m \\ m \end{bmatrix} + \sigma \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ w \\ w \\ w \\ w \end{bmatrix}$$

 $\widetilde{\mathbf{D}}_1$  is computed and found to satisfy the pivoting criteria,

(2) 
$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \widetilde{d} \\ \widetilde{m} \\ \widetilde{m} \\ \widetilde{m} \\ \widetilde{m} \end{bmatrix} + \widetilde{\sigma} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \end{bmatrix} [$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \end{bmatrix}$$

## Case 2:

$$D_1$$
 is  $2\times2$ ,

(1) 
$$\widetilde{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \widetilde{d} & & & \\ \widetilde{d} & \widetilde{d} & & \\ m & m & & \\ m & m & & A^{(2)} & \\ m & m & & \end{pmatrix} + \sigma \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ w \\ w \end{pmatrix} [$$

 $\widetilde{D}_1$  has been computed and does not satisfy the criteria for a 2×2 pivot.

$$(2) \quad \text{Compute} \quad Q_{1}\widetilde{D}_{1}Q_{1}^{t} = \overline{M} \begin{pmatrix} D_{1} & 0 \\ 0 & d \end{pmatrix} \overline{M}^{t}, \quad (\widetilde{M}_{1}, V) = \begin{pmatrix} Q_{1} & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} M_{1}Q_{1}^{t}\overline{M}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} Q_{1} & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} \widetilde{A} \begin{pmatrix} Q_{1}^{t} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \widetilde{d} \\ \widetilde{m} \\ \widetilde{m} \\ \widetilde{m} \\ \widetilde{m} \\ \widetilde{m} \end{pmatrix} A^{(2)} + \widetilde{\sigma} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \end{pmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \end{bmatrix}.$$

We are finished with  $\overset{\sim}{\mathrm{D}}_1$  and are ready to apply the algorithm to the diagonal element in the second position.

#### Case 3:

 $\tilde{D}_1$  is  $1\times 1$  and does not satisfy the pivoting criteria with  $\tilde{D}_2$  also  $1\times 1$ .

(1) 
$$\widetilde{A} = \begin{bmatrix} \widetilde{d} \\ m \\ m \\ m \\ m \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{m} A^{(3)} + \sigma \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ w \\ w \\ w \end{bmatrix}$$

(2) Compute 
$$(M_1, M_2) = (M_1, M_2)\overline{M}, \overline{M} \begin{bmatrix} D_1 & 0 \\ 0 & D_2 \end{bmatrix} \overline{M}^t$$

$$\widetilde{A} = \begin{bmatrix} \widetilde{d} & & & & \\ \widetilde{d} & \widetilde{d} & & & \\ \widetilde{m} & m & & \\ \widetilde{m} & m & & A^{(3)} & & \\ \widetilde{m} & m & & & \\ \widetilde{m} & m & & & \end{bmatrix} + \sigma \begin{bmatrix} 0 & & & \\ 0 & \widetilde{w} & & \\ \widetilde{w} & \widetilde{w} & & \\ \widetilde{w} & & \widetilde{w} \end{bmatrix}$$
[ ].

(3) Apply Case 2.

## Case 4:

 $\widetilde{D}_1$  is l×1 and does not satisfy the pivoting criteria, and  $\widetilde{D}_2$  is 2×2.

(1) 
$$\widetilde{A} = \begin{bmatrix} \widetilde{d} \\ m \end{bmatrix} d \\ m \end{bmatrix} + \sigma \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} m \\ m \\ m \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M \\ M \\ M \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M \\ M \\ M \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} M \\ M \\ M \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M \\ M \\ M \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} M \\ M \\ M \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M \\ M \\ M \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} M$$

(2) Compute 
$$(\hat{M}_1, \hat{M}_2) = (M_1, M_2)L, L \begin{pmatrix} D_1 & 0 \\ 0 & D_2 \end{pmatrix} L^t$$

$$\widetilde{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \widetilde{d} & & & & \\ \widetilde{d} & \widetilde{d} & & & \\ \widetilde{d} & \widetilde{d} & \widetilde{d} & & \\ \widetilde{m} & m & m & & \\ \widetilde{m} & m & m & & A \end{pmatrix} + \sigma \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \widetilde{w} \\ \widetilde{w} \end{pmatrix}$$
[ ].

(3) Compute 
$$Q_1$$
,  $\overline{M}$  such that  $Q_1 DQ_1^t = \overline{M} \begin{bmatrix} \widetilde{D}_1 & 0 \\ 0 & D_2 \end{bmatrix} \overline{M}^t$ 

In (3) the diagonal pivoting strategy could have produced several different block structures for  $\widetilde{D}_1$  and  $\widetilde{D}_2$  depending on the matrix D. We only show the case  $\widetilde{D}_1$  is  $2\times 2$  and  $\widetilde{D}_2$  is  $1\times 1$ .

$$\begin{bmatrix} Q_1 & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix} \widetilde{A} \begin{bmatrix} Q_1^t & 0 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix} = \underbrace{ \begin{bmatrix} \widetilde{d} \\ \widetilde{d} & \widetilde{d} \\ \widetilde{m} & \widetilde{m} \\ \widetilde{m} & \widetilde{m} \end{bmatrix} \widetilde{A} \widetilde{M} }_{ \widetilde{m} \times \widetilde$$

(4) We are finished with  $D_1$  and are ready to apply the algorithm to the diagonal element in the third position.

#### Chapter III

#### Error Analysis of the Updating Algorithm

#### 1. Introduction

We have updated the symmetric indefinite factorization of

$$(1.1) \qquad \tilde{A} = A + \sigma z z^{t}$$

in order to solve the linear system

$$(1.2) \widetilde{A}x = b.$$

A method for solving (1.2) is considered to be stable if the computed result  $\mathbf{x}_{c}$  satisfies

(1.3) 
$$(\widetilde{A}+E)x_{c} = b$$

where  $\|E\|$  is small compared to  $\|\widetilde{A}\|$ . ( $\|\cdot\|$  is the matrix norm induced by a vector norm on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  which we also denote by  $\|\cdot\|$ .)

The following analysis is influenced by the error analysis of the diagonal pivoting method given by Bunch [3]. The solution to (1.2) is given in four steps:

- (1.4) (i)  $\tilde{A} = \widetilde{MDM}^{t}$  (update the decomposition),
  - (ii)  $\tilde{M}_c = b$  (find the new right-hand side c),
  - (iii)  $\tilde{D}y = c$  (solve the 1×1 and 2×2 systems),
    - (iv)  $\tilde{M}^{t}x = y$  (obtain the final solution x).

We have presented an algorithm that is algebraically correct for obtaining (i). There are standard methods for solving (ii), (iii), and (iv). However, in finite precision arithmetic error is introduced at each of the steps (i) - (iv).

Instead of obtaining the exact decomposition of  $\widetilde{A}$ , we actually obtain  $\widehat{M} = (\widetilde{M} + \Delta \widetilde{M})$ , and  $\widehat{D} = (\widetilde{D} + \Delta \widetilde{D})$  such that  $\widehat{MDM}^t = \widetilde{QAQ}^t + S$ . Then when equations (ii), (iii), and (iv) in (1.4) are solved, the errors  $\delta \widehat{M}_1$ ,  $\delta \widehat{D}$ ,  $\delta \widehat{M}_2$  are introduced at steps (ii), (iii), and (iv), respectively.

Thus, we actually compute  $\hat{M}$ ,  $\hat{D}$ , c, y, x such that

(1.5) (i) 
$$\hat{MDM}^{t} = \tilde{Q}(A+\sigma zz^{t})\tilde{Q} + S,$$
  
(ii)  $(\hat{M}+\delta\hat{M}_{1})c = b,$   
(iii)  $(\hat{D}+\delta\hat{D})y = c,$   
(iv)  $(\hat{M}+\delta\hat{M}_{2})x = y.$ 

Now,  $\widetilde{M}$  and  $\widetilde{D}$  are the exact factors of  $\widetilde{A}$ . Therefore, steps (i) - (iv) give the exact solution to the system  $(\widetilde{A}+F)x=b$ , where

(1.6) 
$$\mathbf{F} = (\Delta \widetilde{\mathbf{M}} + \hat{\mathbf{M}}_{1}) [\widetilde{\mathbf{D}} + (\Delta \widetilde{\mathbf{D}} + \delta \hat{\mathbf{D}})] [\widetilde{\mathbf{M}} + (\Delta \mathbf{M} + \delta \hat{\mathbf{M}}_{2})]^{t}$$

$$+ \widetilde{\mathbf{M}} (\Delta \widetilde{\mathbf{D}} + \delta \hat{\mathbf{D}}) [\widetilde{\mathbf{M}} + (\Delta \widetilde{\mathbf{M}} + \sigma \hat{\mathbf{M}}_{2})]^{t}$$

$$+ \widetilde{\mathbf{M}} \widetilde{\mathbf{D}} (\Delta \widetilde{\mathbf{M}} + \delta \hat{\mathbf{M}}_{2})^{t} + \mathbf{s}.$$

In this chapter if  $x = a_1 \varepsilon + a_2 \varepsilon^2 + \ldots + a_k \varepsilon^k$ , where  $a_1 \neq 0$ , then we write  $x = 0(\varepsilon)$  and say x is of order  $\varepsilon$  as  $\varepsilon \neq 0$ . If B is an  $n \times n$  matrix with elements  $b_{ij}$ , then we shall denote  $\widetilde{B} = 0(\varepsilon)B$  if  $\widetilde{b}_{ij} = b_{ij}\phi_{ij}(\varepsilon)$ , where  $\phi_{ij}(\varepsilon) = 0(\varepsilon)$ . In the following analysis we shall obtain expressions of the form

(1.7) (i) 
$$(\Delta \widetilde{M} + \delta \widehat{M}_1) = O(\varepsilon)\widetilde{M} + G(\varepsilon),$$
  
(ii)  $(\Delta \widetilde{D} + \delta \widehat{D}) = O(\varepsilon)\widetilde{D} + H(\varepsilon),$   
(iii)  $(\Delta \widetilde{M} + \delta \widehat{M}_2)^{t} = O(\varepsilon)\widetilde{M}^{t} + G(\varepsilon).$ 

Using (1.7) in (1.6) gives

$$(1.8) F = (0(\varepsilon)\widetilde{M} + G(\varepsilon))[\widetilde{D} + 0(\varepsilon)D][M + 0(\varepsilon)\widetilde{M}^{t} + G(\varepsilon)]^{t}$$

$$+ \widetilde{M}(0(\varepsilon)D)[\widetilde{M} + 0(\varepsilon)\widetilde{M} + G(\varepsilon)]^{t}$$

$$+ \widetilde{M}D(0(\varepsilon)\widetilde{M} + G(\varepsilon))^{t} + \widehat{M}H(\varepsilon)\widehat{M}^{t} + S$$

$$= 0(\varepsilon)\widetilde{M}\widetilde{D}\widetilde{M}^{t} + G(\varepsilon)\widetilde{D}\widetilde{M}^{t}$$

$$+ \widetilde{M}(0(\varepsilon)D)\widetilde{M}^{t}$$

$$+ \widetilde{M}\widetilde{D}(0(\varepsilon)M^{t}) + \widetilde{M}\widetilde{D}[G(\varepsilon)]^{t} + \widetilde{M}H(\varepsilon)\widetilde{M}^{t}$$

$$+ 0(\varepsilon^{2})B + S.$$

The  $0(\epsilon^2)B$  term in (1.8) is negligible when compared to the dominant first order terms. The combined terms give

$$F = 0(\varepsilon)\widetilde{MDM}^{t} + 0(\varepsilon^{2})B + S,$$

if 
$$G(\varepsilon) = O(\varepsilon)\widetilde{M}$$
,  $H(\varepsilon) = O(\varepsilon)\widetilde{D}$ , and  $S = O(\varepsilon)\widetilde{A}$ . Then

(1.9) 
$$\frac{\|\mathbf{E}\|}{\|\widetilde{\mathbf{A}}\|} = 0(\varepsilon);$$

hence the method is stable.

However, we shall also see that the terms S, G, and E will involve products of the entries of solutions to triangular systems involving the original factor M. Thus if M is ill-conditioned,  $(\|\mathbf{M}\| \|\mathbf{M}^{-1}\| \text{ is large compared to the number of significant digits available in our finite precision arithmetic) then the updating procedure cannot guarantee that the constant in the <math>O(\epsilon)$  term in (1.9) is of moderate size.

#### 2. A Detailed Description of the Updating Algorithm

We shall now give a detailed floating point analysis of the computations performed in our updating algorithm. There are two parts to a step of the algorithm. An intermediate step of the algorithm

results in a sum of matrices of the form

(2.1) 
$$\widetilde{Q}_{k}\widetilde{A}\widetilde{Q}_{k}^{t} = \widetilde{A}^{(k-1)} + C_{k} + A^{(k+\ell)},$$

with

$$\widetilde{A}^{(k-1)} = \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} \widetilde{M}_{j} \widetilde{D}_{j} \widetilde{M}_{j}^{t}, \quad A^{(k+\ell)} = \sum_{j=k+\ell}^{m} M_{j} D_{j} M_{j}^{t},$$

where  $\ell$  is 1 or 2. Let  $\mathbf{w^{(j)}} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{w_1^{(j)}} \\ \mathbf{w_1^{(j)}} \\ \mathbf{w_2^{(j)}} \end{pmatrix}$  for  $1 \leq j \leq m$ , where  $\mathbf{w} = \sum_{j=1}^{m} \mathbf{M_j} \mathbf{w_1^{(j)}}$  and  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \mathbf{w^{(j+1)}} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \mathbf{w^{(j)}} \end{pmatrix} - \mathbf{M_j} \mathbf{w_1^{(j)}}$ .

Part 1 of a step consists in preparing the matrix  $C_k$  for part 2. This involves possibly bringing the term  $M_{k+\ell}D_{k+\ell}M_{k+\ell}^t$  into the matrix  $C_k$  and performing certain operations on the factors of  $C_k$  to obtain a special form. Part 2 consists in permuting certain columns and elements of the factors of  $C_k$  and obtaining the updated  $\widetilde{M}_k$  and  $\widetilde{D}_k$ .

We shall now describe an intermediate step in detail.

#### Part 1.

The previous steps of the algorithm have resulted in

(a) 
$$C_k = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v^{(k)} & w^{(k+1)} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \delta & \beta \\ \beta & \sigma \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v^{(k)} & w^{(k+1)} \end{bmatrix}^t$$

with  $|\delta| < \alpha |\beta|$ , or in

(b) 
$$C_k = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ w^{(k)} \end{pmatrix} [\sigma][0, w^{(k)t}]$$
.

We shall now drop the superscripts. If (a) holds then we replace  $\mathbf{C}_{\mathbf{k}}$  by

$$C_{k} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & | & | & 0 \\ 1 & | & | & | & 0 \\ v & | & | & w \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \delta & 0 & \beta \\ 0 & D_{k+1} & 0 \\ \beta & 0 & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & | & | & 0 \\ 1 & | & M_{k+1} & 0 \\ v & | & | & w \end{pmatrix}^{t}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ v_{1} & 1 & w_{1} \\ v_{2} & M' & w_{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \delta & 0 & \beta \\ 0 & D_{k+1} & 0 \\ \beta & 0 & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ v_{1} & 1 & w_{1} \\ v_{2} & M' & w_{2} \end{pmatrix}^{t}$$

where we have partitioned

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{v}_1 \\ \mathbf{v}_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{w} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{w}_1 \\ \mathbf{w}_2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{M}_{k+1} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{I} \\ \mathbf{M}^{\dagger} \end{pmatrix}.$$

We then compute

(2.2) 
$$C_{k} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & I & 0 \\ v_{2}^{-M'}v_{1} & M' & w_{2}^{-M'}w_{1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{p} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & I & 0 \\ v_{2}^{-M'}v_{1} & M' & w_{2}^{-M'}w_{1} \end{pmatrix}^{T},$$

where

$$\hat{\left(\mathbf{\hat{D}}\right)} = \begin{bmatrix} \delta & \delta \mathbf{v_1^t} + \beta \mathbf{w_1^t} & \beta \\ \mathbf{v_1} \delta + \mathbf{w_1} \beta & \mathbf{D_{k+1}} + \delta \mathbf{v_1} \mathbf{v_1^t} + \beta (\mathbf{v_1} \mathbf{w_1^t} + \mathbf{w_1} \mathbf{v_1^t}) + \sigma \mathbf{w_1} \mathbf{w_1^t} & \mathbf{v_1} \beta + \mathbf{w_1} \sigma \\ \beta & \beta \mathbf{v_1^t} + \sigma \mathbf{w_1^t} & \sigma \end{bmatrix}.$$

Now we proceed to part 2.

If (b) holds then we replace  $C_k$  by

$$C_{k} = \begin{pmatrix} & & & 0 \\ & M_{k} & & & \\ & & w \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} & D_{k} & 0 \\ & 0 & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} & & & 0 \\ & M_{k} & & & \\ & & w \end{pmatrix}^{t}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} & & & & \\ & I & w_{1} \\ & M' & w_{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} & D_{k} & 0 \\ & 0 & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} & & & \\ & I & w_{1} \\ & M' & w_{2} \end{pmatrix}^{t},$$

where we have partitioned

$$w = \begin{pmatrix} w_1 \\ w_2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad M_k = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ I \\ M' \end{pmatrix}.$$

We then compute

(2.3) 
$$C_{k} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ I & 0 \\ M' & w_{2}-M'w_{1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} D_{k} + \sigma w_{1}w_{1}^{t} & \sigma w_{1} \\ \sigma w_{1}^{t} & \sigma \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ I & 0 \\ M' & w_{2}-M'w_{1} \end{bmatrix}^{t}$$

and proceed to part 2.

## Part 2.

Part 1 has resulted in a matrix of the form

(2.4) 
$$C_{\mathbf{k}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ \mathbf{I} & 0 \\ \mathbf{V} & \mathbf{w} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \overline{\mathbf{D}} & \mathbf{b} \\ \mathbf{b}^{\mathsf{t}} & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ \mathbf{I} & 0 \\ \mathbf{V} & \mathbf{w} \end{pmatrix}^{\mathsf{t}},$$

where  $\overline{D}$  is a symmetric matrix of order at most 3. We then apply pivoting strategy  $S_{\alpha}$  only to the matrix  $\overline{D}$  producing a permutation matrix Q, and a  $1\times 1$  or a  $2\times 2$  matrix  $\widetilde{D}$  such that

$$\overline{C}_{k} = \begin{pmatrix} I & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & Q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & I \end{pmatrix} C_{k} \begin{pmatrix} I & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & Q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & I \end{pmatrix}^{t}$$

is given by one of the following forms:

(a) 
$$\overline{D} = (\delta)$$
 is  $1 \times 1$ ,  $b = (\beta)$ , and  $|\delta| \ge \alpha |\beta|$ .

(2.5) 
$$\overline{C}_{k} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v+w(\beta/\delta) & w \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \delta & 0 \\ 0 & \widetilde{\sigma} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v+w(\beta/\delta) & w \end{pmatrix}^{t}$$

with  $\widetilde{\sigma} = \sigma - \beta^2/\delta$ . We then take  $\widetilde{D}_k = (\delta)$ ,  $\widetilde{M}_k = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ v+w(\beta/\delta) \end{pmatrix}$ , and  $\sigma$  is replaced with  $\widetilde{\sigma}$ . Return to part 1.

(b) 
$$Q\overline{D}Q^{t} = \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{11} & \delta_{21} \\ \delta_{21} & \delta_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$
,  $b^{t} = (\beta_{1}, \beta_{2})$ ,  $|\delta_{11}| \ge |\delta_{22}|$ , and

 $|\delta_{11}| \geq \alpha |\delta_{21}|$ . Then

(2.6) 
$$\overline{C}_{k} = L_{k} \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix} L_{k}^{t},$$

where

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{22} - \delta_{21}^2 / \delta_{11} & \beta_2 - (\beta_1 \delta_{21}) / \delta_{11} \\ \beta_2 - (\beta_1 \delta_{21}) / \delta_{11} & \sigma - \beta_1^2 / \delta_{11} \end{pmatrix},$$

and we have partitioned  $V = (v_1, v_2)$ . We then take

$$\widetilde{D}_{k} = (\delta_{11}), \ \widetilde{M}_{k} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & \\ & 1 & \\ & \delta_{21}/\delta_{11} & \\ v_{1} + v_{2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11}) + w(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11}) \end{pmatrix}, \ \text{and}$$

$$C_{k+1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v, w \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v, w \end{pmatrix}^{t}.$$

Return to part 1.

(2.7) 
$$\begin{array}{ccc}
(c) & \overline{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{11} & \delta_{21} \\ \delta_{21} & \delta_{22} \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \max(|\delta_{11}|, |\delta_{22}|) < \alpha |\delta_{21}|. \\
& & & \\
C_k = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ I & 0 \\ V + wb^{t}\overline{D}^{-1} & w \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \overline{D} & 0 \\ 0 & \sigma - b^{t}\overline{D}^{-1}b \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ I & 0 \\ V + wb^{t}\overline{D}^{-1} & w \end{pmatrix}^{t}.$$

We then take

$$\widetilde{D}_{k} = \overline{D}, \widetilde{M}_{k} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ I \\ V + wb \overline{D}^{-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

and replace  $\sigma$  by  $\sigma - b^{t-1}b$ .

(d) 
$$Q\overline{D}Q^{\dagger} = \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{11} & \delta_{21} & \delta_{31} \\ \delta_{21} & \overline{D}_{2} \\ \delta_{31} & & \end{pmatrix}$$
,  $\delta_{11}$  is the pivot choice when

 $S_{\alpha}$  is applied to  $\overline{D}$ ,  $|\delta_{11}| \ge \alpha |\delta_{11}|$  for i=2,3; and  $b^t = (\beta_1, b_2^t)$ .

$$(2.8) \quad \overline{c}_{\mathbf{k}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \delta_{21}/\delta_{11} & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \delta_{31}/\delta_{11} & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \widetilde{\mathbf{v}}_{1} & \mathbf{v}_{2} & \mathbf{v}_{3} & \mathbf{w} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \widehat{\mathbf{b}}_{2} & \widehat{\mathbf{b}}_{2} \\ 0 & \widehat{\mathbf{b}}_{2}^{\mathbf{t}} & \widetilde{\mathbf{c}} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \delta_{21}/\delta_{11} & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \delta_{31}/\delta_{11} & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \widetilde{\mathbf{v}}_{1} & \mathbf{v}_{2} & \mathbf{v}_{3} & \mathbf{w} \end{pmatrix}^{\mathbf{t}}$$

where  $\tilde{v}_1 = v_1 + v_2(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11}) + v_3(\delta_{31}/\delta_{11}) + w(\beta_1/\delta_{11})$ ,

$$\hat{\mathbf{p}}_{2} = \overline{\mathbf{p}}_{2} - \frac{1}{\delta_{11}} \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{21} \\ \delta_{31} \end{pmatrix} (\delta_{21}, \delta_{31}) ,$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{b}}_{2}^{t} = \mathbf{b}_{2}^{t} - (\beta_{1}/\delta_{11})(\delta_{21}, \delta_{31}) ,$$

$$\tilde{\sigma} = \sigma - \beta_{1}^{2}/\delta_{11} ,$$

and we have partitioned  $V = (v_1, v_2, v_3)$ .

We then take

$$\widetilde{D}_{k} = (\delta_{11}), \ \widetilde{M}_{k} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ \delta_{21}/\delta_{11} \\ \delta_{31}/\delta_{11} \\ \widetilde{v}_{1} \end{pmatrix},$$

and

$$\mathbf{c_{k+1}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \mathbf{v_1} & \mathbf{v_2} & \mathbf{w} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \widetilde{\mathbf{p}}_2 & \widetilde{\mathbf{b}}_2 \\ \widetilde{\mathbf{b}}_2^* & \widetilde{\sigma} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \mathbf{v_1} & \mathbf{v_2} & \mathbf{w} \end{pmatrix}.$$

We now bypass part 1 since  $C_{k+1}$  is already in the proper form needed to apply part 2.

(e) 
$$Q\overline{D}Q^{t} = \begin{pmatrix} \overline{D}_{1} & \delta_{31} \\ & \delta_{32} \\ \delta_{31} & \delta_{32} & \delta_{33} \end{pmatrix}$$
;  $S_{\alpha}$  applied to  $\overline{D}$  resulted in

the choice of a 2×2 pivot  $D_1$ ;  $|\det \overline{D}_1| \ge (1-\alpha^2)(\max |d_{ij}|)^2$ , and  $b^t = (b_1^t, \beta_2)$ .

$$(2.9) \quad \overline{C}_{k} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ I & 0 & 0 \\ \widetilde{d}^{t} & 1 & 0 \\ v_{1} + v_{2}\widetilde{d}^{t} + w\widetilde{b}_{1}^{t} & v_{2} & w \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \overline{D}_{1} & 0 \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ I & 0 & 0 \\ \widetilde{d}^{t} & 1 & 0 \\ v_{1} + v_{2}\widetilde{d}^{t} + w\widetilde{b}_{1}^{t} & v_{2} & w \end{pmatrix}^{t}$$

where

$$\begin{split} \widetilde{\mathbf{d}}^t &= (\delta_{31}, \ \delta_{32}) \overline{\mathbf{p}}_1^{-1} \ , \\ \widetilde{\mathbf{b}}_1^t &= \mathbf{b}_1^t \overline{\mathbf{p}}_1^{-1} \ , \\ \mathbf{B} &= \left( \begin{array}{c} \delta_{33} - (\delta_{31}, \ \delta_{32}) \overline{\mathbf{p}}_1^{-1} {\delta_{31} \choose \delta_{32}} & \beta_2 - \mathbf{b}_1^t \overline{\mathbf{p}}_1^{-1} {\delta_{31} \choose \delta_{32}} \\ \\ \beta_2 - \mathbf{b}_1^t \overline{\mathbf{p}}_1^{-1} {\delta_{31} \choose \delta_{32}} & \sigma - \mathbf{b}_1^t \overline{\mathbf{p}}_1^{-1} \mathbf{b}_1 \end{array} \right) \ , \end{split}$$

and we have partitioned  $V = (V_1, V_2)$ .

We then take

$$\widetilde{D}_{k} = \overline{D}_{1}, \quad \widetilde{M}_{k} = \begin{bmatrix} & 0 & \\ & I & \\ & \widetilde{d}^{t} & \\ v_{1} + v_{2}\widetilde{d}^{t} + w\widetilde{b}_{1}^{t} \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$C_{k+1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v_2 & w \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v_2 & w \end{pmatrix}^{t}.$$

Return to part 1.

# Floating Point Analysis

Now that we have a detailed description of the numerical operations performed, we are ready to examine the error introduced when these operations are carried out in finite precision floating point arithmetic. We shall work in base  $\beta$ , t-digit floating point arithmetic. We call  $\epsilon \equiv \frac{1}{2} \ \beta^{1-t}$  the basic machine unit. Let

$$\begin{split} \text{FL}(\beta,t) &= \big\{\theta\colon \theta = \pm \beta^k \Bigg( \sum_{j=1}^t \gamma_j \beta^{-j} \Bigg), \quad 0 \leq \gamma_j \leq (\beta-1) \ , \\ &= \text{each } \delta_j \text{ an integer,} \\ &1 \leq \gamma_1 \leq (\beta-1), \text{ k any integer} \big\}. \end{split}$$

We then have [10]

$$f\ell(\theta_1^*\theta_2) = (\theta_1^*\theta_2)(1+\epsilon')$$
,

where  $|\epsilon'| \leq \epsilon$ , whenever  $\theta_1, \theta_2 \in F\ell(\beta, t)$  are floating point numbers, and \* is one of the operations  $\{+, -, \cdot, /\}$ , and  $f\ell(\theta_1 * \theta_2)$  is the nearest number in  $F\ell(\beta, t)$  to the real number  $\theta_1 * \theta_2$ . We shall also write  $f\ell(B)$  to denote the computed elements of the matrix (or vector) B.

Lemma (3.1). Consider the vector  $v^{(k)}$  defined in part 1(a) of section 2. Then the components  $v_i^{(k)}$  of  $v^{(k)}$  satisfy

$$f\ell(v_i^{(k)}) = v_i^{(k)} + \tau_i^{(k)}(\varepsilon)$$
,

where

(3.1) 
$$|\tau_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k})}(\varepsilon)| \leq (3+\varepsilon)\varepsilon(\mathbf{i}-1)\max_{\ell \leq \mathbf{k}} |\nu_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\ell)}| .$$

<u>Proof.</u> The vector  $\mathbf{v}^{(k)}$  is the vector  $\mathbf{v}_2$  appearing in one and only one of the expressions (2.6) or (2.9) at step k-1. The vector  $\mathbf{v}_2$  in (2.6) or (2.9) is one of the columns of the matrix V in the expression (2.4). Since V in (2.4) is given by (2.2) or by (2.3), we see that

(3.2) 
$$V = (v_2^{(k-1)} - M'v_1^{(k-1)}) \text{ or } V = M',$$

where

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ I \\ M' \end{pmatrix} = M_{k+1}, \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{pmatrix} v_1^{(k-1)} \\ v_2^{(k-1)} \end{pmatrix} = v^{(k-1)}.$$

If  $v^{(k)}$  is defined as a column of M, then no error is introduced. However, if

(3.3) 
$$v^{(k)} = v_2^{(k-1)} - M'v_1^{(k-1)},$$

then let j be the largest index less than k for which  $\mathbf{v^{(j)}}$  was defined by a column of M. Then

where we have partitioned  $\mathbf{v}^{(\ell)} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{v}_1^{(\ell)} \\ \mathbf{v}_2^{(\ell)} \end{pmatrix}$  so that  $\mathbf{M}_{\ell} \mathbf{v}_1^{(\ell-1)}$  makes sense. The

formula (3.4) can be derived from (3.3) using an inductive argument. We recognize (3.4) as the process we would use to solve the linear system

$$(3.5) Mx = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ v(j) \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $v^{(k)}$  is the result of the  $k^{th}$  step of that process. Then it has been shown [6] that

$$f\ell(v_i^{(k)}) = v_i^{(k)} + \tau_i^{(k)}(\varepsilon)$$
,

where

(3.6) 
$$|\tau_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k})}(\varepsilon)| \leq (3+\varepsilon)\varepsilon(\mathbf{i}-1) \max_{\mathbf{j} \leq \ell \leq \mathbf{k}} |v_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\ell)}| .$$

The bound (3.1) follows from (3.6), but is not as good as (3.6); however, (3.6) cannot be obtained without prior knowledge of the index j.  $\Box$ 

We shall comment now on the growth of the  $v_i^{(\ell)}$  in (3.4). Let us consider equation (3.5) further. Since  $v^{(j)}$  is defined by that portion of some column of M (say column i) which lies below the main diagonal, we may write (3.5) as

$$Mx = Me_i - e_i$$
,

where  $e_i$  is the basis vector defined by  $(e_i)_j = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } j \neq i \\ 1 & \text{if } j = i \end{cases}$ . Thus

$$M(x-e_i) = -e_i.$$

Therefore, the solution  $e_i - x$  is a column of  $M^{-1}$ . This shows that the  $v_1^{(\ell)}$  in (3.4) are in fact composed of elements of  $M^{-1}$ . We now observe that undue growth in the  $v_1^{(\ell)}$  in (3.4) indicates severe ill-conditioning of the matrix M with respect to solving linear equations.

Lemma (3.2). Consider the computed quantities  $f\ell(w_1^{(k)})$ . Then if

$$\widetilde{p} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} f\ell(w^{(1)}) \\ \vdots \\ f\ell(w_1^{(m)}) \end{pmatrix},$$

we have the  $\tilde{p}$  satisfies the equation

$$(M+T)_{p}^{\sim} = w$$

where the elements  $\tau_{ij}$  of T satisfy

$$|\tau_{ij}| \leq (n+1)\gamma |m_{ij}|\epsilon$$

Here,  $\gamma$  is a constant of order unity and the  $m_{ij}$  are the elements of M. Proof: One observes that the  $w_1^{(j)}$  are computed from the standard back substitution algorithm. The result then follows from [20].

Let us drop the f $\ell$ -notation and hereafter regard the quantities  $w_1^{(j)}$  as computed quantities. Then Lemma (3.2) shows that we may write

(3.7) 
$$MDM^{t} + \sigma w w^{t} = M(D + \sigma \begin{pmatrix} w_{1}^{(1)} \\ \vdots \\ w_{1}^{(m)} \end{pmatrix} [w_{1}^{(1)} \dots w_{1}^{(m)}] M^{t}$$

$$+ \sigma \left( T \begin{pmatrix} w_{1}^{(1)} \\ \vdots \\ w_{1}^{(m)} \end{pmatrix} w^{t} + w[w_{1}^{(1)} \dots w_{1}^{(m)}] T^{t} \right)$$

$$+ \sigma T \begin{pmatrix} w_{1}^{(1)} \\ \vdots \\ w_{1}^{(m)} \end{pmatrix} [w_{1}^{(1)} \dots w_{1}^{(m)}] T^{t} .$$

Thus we shall now regard the vectors  $\mathbf{w}^{(k)}$  as exact quantities. The error introduced from the computation of these quantities in finite precision is expressed in the error matrix

$$S = \sigma \left\{ T_{pw}^{\sim} t + w_{p}^{\sim} t_{T}^{\tau} + T_{pp}^{\sim} t_{T}^{\tau} \right\} .$$

Lemma (3.3). Let  $v_1^{(k)}$  denote a component of  $v_1^{(k)}$ . (See Lemma (3.1), equation (3.2).) Let  $\omega_j^{(k)}$  denote a component of  $w_1^{(k)}$ . Then the floating point computation of  $\widetilde{D}$  results in

$$f\ell(\widetilde{D}) = \widetilde{D} + E$$
,

where E is a block diagonal matrix with the same structure as that of  $\widetilde{D}$ . Moreover, the 2×2 blocks of  $f\ell(\widetilde{D})$  satisfy

$$\alpha |\widetilde{\delta}_{21}^{(k)}| > \max(|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}^{(k)}|, |\widetilde{\delta}_{22}^{(k)}|), \text{ where } \widetilde{D}_{k} = \begin{bmatrix} \widetilde{\delta}_{11}^{(k)} & \widetilde{\delta}_{21}^{(k)} \\ \widetilde{\delta}_{11}^{(k)} & \widetilde{\delta}_{21}^{(k)} \end{bmatrix}$$

and the elements  $\epsilon_{ij}$  of E satisfy

(3.8) 
$$\left|\varepsilon_{ij}\right| \leq C\varepsilon$$
,

where

$$0 \leq C < \max_{i \neq k} (|\delta_{ij}|, \alpha |\beta_k(v_i^{(k)})^2|, 2|\beta_k v_i^{(k)} \omega_j^{(k)}|, |\sigma_k(\omega_i^{(k)})^2|) 49.$$

(Here  $\sigma_k$  is " $\sigma$ " at the  $k^{\mbox{th}}$  step, and  $\beta_k$  is the " $\beta$ " appearing in part 1 at the  $k^{\mbox{th}}$  step.)

<u>Proof:</u> From equations (2.2) and (2.3) we see that the updated diagonal blocks  $\widetilde{D}_k$  are obtained by decomposing matrices of the form

$$\hat{\mathbf{p}}_{1} = \begin{bmatrix} \delta & \delta \mathbf{v}_{1}^{t} + \beta \mathbf{w}_{1}^{t} & \beta \\ \mathbf{v}_{1} \delta + \mathbf{w}_{1} \beta & D_{k+1} + \delta \mathbf{v}_{1} \mathbf{v}_{1}^{t} + \beta (\mathbf{v}_{1} \mathbf{w}_{1}^{t} + \mathbf{w}_{1} \mathbf{v}_{1}^{t}) + \sigma \mathbf{w}_{1} \mathbf{w}_{1}^{t} & \mathbf{v}_{1} \beta + \sigma \mathbf{w}_{1} \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\beta \mathbf{v}_{1}^{t} + \delta \mathbf{v}_{1}^{t} + \sigma \mathbf{w}_{1}^{t} & \sigma \end{bmatrix}$$

with  $\left|\delta\right|<\alpha\left|\beta\right|$  if equation (2.2) was used, or

$$\hat{\mathbf{D}}_{2} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{D}_{k} + \sigma \mathbf{w}_{1} \mathbf{w}_{1}^{t} & \sigma \mathbf{w}_{1} \\ & & \\ & \sigma \mathbf{w}_{1}^{t} & \delta \end{pmatrix}$$

if equation (2.3) was used. Here the v's, w's,  $\beta$ ,  $\delta$ ,  $\alpha$  are the previously computed quantities at step k; we have left off the superscripts.

Then

$$f\ell(\hat{D}_{\ell}) = \hat{D}_{\ell} + E_{\ell}, (\ell \text{ is 1 or 2}),$$

where a typical (i,j) element of  $f_{\ell}(D_1)$  is of the form

$$\left[ \left\{ \left[ \delta_{ij} + \delta v_{i} v_{j} (1 + \epsilon_{1}) (1 + \epsilon_{2}) \right] (1 + \epsilon_{3}) + 2 \beta v_{i} \omega_{j} (1 + \epsilon_{4}) (1 + \epsilon_{5}) \right. \right.$$

$$\left. \left[ \left\{ \left[ \delta_{ij} + \delta v_{i} v_{j} (1 + \epsilon_{7}) (1 + \epsilon_{8}) \right] (1 + \epsilon_{9}) + 2 \beta v_{i} \omega_{j} (1 + \epsilon_{4}) (1 + \epsilon_{5}) \right] \right]$$

$$= \delta_{ij}^{(1+\epsilon_3)(1+\epsilon_6)(1+\epsilon_9)} + \delta_{\nu_i \nu_j}^{(1+\epsilon_1)(1+\epsilon_2)(1+\epsilon_3)(1+\epsilon_6)(1+\epsilon_9)} + 2\beta_{\nu_i \omega_j}^{(1+\epsilon_4)(1+\epsilon_5)(1+\epsilon_6)(1+\epsilon_9)} + \sigma_{\omega_i \omega_j}^{(1+\epsilon_7)(1+\epsilon_8)(1+\epsilon_9)},$$

where  $|\varepsilon_i| \leq \varepsilon$ .

Now, if r $\epsilon$  < 0.1 and  $|\rho|$  <  $\epsilon$ , then  $(1+\rho)^r = 1 + r\rho'$ , where  $|\rho'|$  < 1.06 $\epsilon$  [19, ex. 4, p. 80], and if  $|\rho_1|, \ldots, |\rho_r| \le \epsilon$  then

$$(1+\rho_1)$$
 ...  $(1+\rho_r) = 1 + r\rho$ ,

where  $|\rho| < 1.06\varepsilon$ . Thus we see that if the elements of  $\hat{D}_{\ell}$  are denoted by  $\delta_{ij}^{(\ell)}$  and the elements of  $E_{\ell}$  are denoted by  $\varepsilon_{ij}^{(\ell)}$  then

$$\delta_{ij}^{(1)} + \epsilon_{ij}^{(1)} = \delta_{ij}^{(1+3\rho_1)} + \delta_{\nu_i \nu_j}^{\nu_j} (1+5\rho_2) + \\
+ 2\beta_{\nu_i \omega_j}^{\omega_j} (1+4\rho_3) + \sigma_{\omega_i \omega_j}^{\omega_j} (1+3\rho_4) ,$$

where  $|\rho_j|$  < 1.06 $\epsilon$  for j = 1,2,3,4, and  $|\delta|$  <  $\alpha|\beta|$ . Hence,

$$\left|\varepsilon_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{j}}^{(1)}\right| \leq \max(\left|\delta_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{j}}\right|, \, \alpha \left|\beta v_{\mathbf{i}}v_{\mathbf{j}}\right|, \, 2 \left|\beta v_{\mathbf{i}}\omega_{\mathbf{j}}\right|, \, \left|\sigma \omega_{\mathbf{i}}\omega_{\mathbf{j}}\right|) 15 (1.06) \varepsilon \ .$$

Maximizing the quantities which appear in this expression gives the bound

$$(3.9) \quad \left| \varepsilon_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{j}}^{(\ell)} \right| \leq \max_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{j}\mathbf{k}} (\left| \delta_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{j}} \right|, \left| \alpha \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \left[ v_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k})} \right]^{2} \right|, \left| 2 \left| \beta_{\mathbf{k}} v_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k})} \omega_{\mathbf{j}}^{(\mathbf{k})} \right|, \left| \sigma_{\mathbf{k}} (\omega_{\mathbf{j}}^{(\mathbf{k})})^{2} \right|) 15.9 \varepsilon.$$

The case we have examined is clearly the worst case for the type of analysis we have carried out. Thus we take (3.9) as our bound for

the elements of E ,  $(\ell = 1,2)$ .

The next step in obtaining  $\tilde{D}_k$  is given by decomposing  $\hat{D}_1$  or  $\hat{D}_2$  according to one of the equations (2.5)-(2.9). Let us refer now to the proof of Lemma (2.3) of Chapter II. Specifically we consider the decomposition given in equation (2.12) of Chapter II. There it was shown that a scale factor  $\mu$  may be implicitly introduced in the last row and column of  $\hat{D}_1$  or  $\hat{D}_2$ . This factor has no consequence on the final result. However, when  $\hat{D}_1$  or  $\hat{D}_2$  is suitably scaled in this way then pivoting strategy  $S_{\alpha}$  does not choose any of the elements in the last row or column as pivot elements. We then obtain a computed factorization.

$$\hat{\mathbf{M}}\hat{\mathbf{D}}\hat{\mathbf{M}}^{\mathsf{t}} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Q} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & 1 \end{pmatrix} (\hat{\mathbf{D}}_{\mathbf{i}} + \mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{i}}) \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Q} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{\mathsf{t}} + \mathbf{F}_{\mathbf{i}} \ (\mathsf{i} = 1 \ \mathsf{or} \ 2).$$

The analysis given in [3] applied to this (at most) 4×4 case shows that the elements  $f_{ij}^{(\ell)}$  of  $F_{\ell}$  satisfy

(3.10) 
$$|f_{ij}^{(\ell)}| \leq \max_{ij} |\delta_{ij}^{(\ell)}| (34\varepsilon).$$

Now (3.10) together with (3.9) give the bound in (3.8).

We have given an analysis of all of the operations in part 1 and of the formation of  $\widetilde{D}$ . We now turn to an analysis of the final formation of the elements of M. We begin with

<u>Lemma (3.4)</u>. Let  $\widetilde{m}_{ij}$  be the  $ij^{th}$  element of  $\widetilde{M}$  with i > j. Then

(3.11) 
$$f\ell(\widetilde{m}_{ij}) = \widetilde{m}_{ij} + \widetilde{m}_{ij}\mu_{ij}(\varepsilon) + \nu_{ij}(\varepsilon) ,$$

where

$$|\mu_{ii}(\varepsilon)| \leq \varepsilon(3+\varepsilon)$$
,

and

$$|v_{ij}(\varepsilon)| \leq \max_{i,k} |v_i^{(k)}| (\varepsilon(3 + \max[\frac{7}{\alpha}, \frac{1}{1-\alpha}]) + O(\varepsilon^2))$$
.

<u>Proof:</u> We shall give a detailed analysis of the operations used in forming  $\widetilde{M}$ . These operations are described in part 2 a-e. We shall have to examine each case separately. Cases a-e below refer to the operations performed in part 2 a-e, respectively. The errors resulting from computing the quantities  $\beta/\delta$ ,  $b^{T}\widetilde{D}^{-1}$  have been accounted for in Lemma (3.3). Therefore, we shall assume here that we have these quantities exactly.

Case a: The vector  $\widetilde{M}_k$  is computed by

$$f\ell(\widetilde{M}_{k}) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ f\ell(v^{(k)} + w^{(k+1)}(\beta/\delta)) \end{pmatrix}$$

Now,

$$\begin{split} & f\ell(\nu_{i}^{(k)} + \omega_{i}^{(k+1)}(\beta/\delta)) = \\ & = (\nu_{i}^{(k)} + [\omega_{i}^{(k)}(\beta/\delta)](1+\epsilon_{1}))(1+\epsilon_{2}) \\ & = [\nu_{i}^{(k)} + \omega_{i}^{(k)}(\beta/\delta)](1+\epsilon_{2}) + \omega_{i}^{(k)}(\beta/\delta)(\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{1}\epsilon_{2}) \\ & = \widetilde{m}_{ik} + \widetilde{m}_{ik} + \widetilde{m}_{ik} + \widetilde{m}_{ik} + \widetilde{m}_{ik} + \omega_{i}^{(k)}(\beta/\delta)(\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{1}\epsilon_{2}) \\ & = \widetilde{m}_{ik} + \widetilde{m}_{ik}\epsilon_{2} + (\nu_{i}^{(k)} + \omega_{i}^{(k)}(\beta/\delta))(\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{1}\epsilon_{2}) \\ & - \nu_{i}^{(k)}(\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{1}\epsilon_{2}) \\ & = \widetilde{m}_{ik} + \widetilde{m}_{ik}(\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{1}\epsilon_{2}) - \nu_{i}^{(k)}(\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{1}\epsilon_{2}) . \end{split}$$

Case b:  $\widetilde{M}_{k}$  is computed by

$$f\ell(\widetilde{M}_{k}) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & & & & \\ & 1 & & & \\ & & \delta_{21}/\delta_{11} & & \\ f\ell(v_{1} + v_{2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11}) + w^{(k+1)}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11})) & & & \end{pmatrix}$$

Let  $v_j$  have components  $v_{ij}$ , j = 1,2.

Now,

$$\begin{split} & \text{f}\ell(\widetilde{\mathbf{m}}_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{k}}) = \text{f}\ell(\nu_{\mathbf{i}1} + \nu_{\mathbf{i}2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11}) + \omega_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{1})}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11})) \\ & = \{[\nu_{\mathbf{i}1} + \nu_{\mathbf{i}2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11})(1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{i}})](1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}) \\ & + \omega_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{1})}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11})(1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}})\}(1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{4}}) \\ & = [\nu_{\mathbf{i}1}(1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}) + \nu_{\mathbf{i}2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11})(1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{1}}+\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}+\epsilon_{\mathbf{1}}\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}) \\ & + \omega_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{1})}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11})(1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}})](1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{4}}) \\ & = \widetilde{\mathbf{m}}_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{k}} + \widetilde{\mathbf{m}}_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{k}}\epsilon_{\mathbf{4}} \\ & + (1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{4}})[\nu_{\mathbf{i}1}\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}} + \nu_{\mathbf{i}2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11})(\epsilon_{\mathbf{1}}+\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}+\epsilon_{\mathbf{1}}\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}) \\ & + \omega_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{1})}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11})\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}}] \\ & = \widetilde{\mathbf{m}}_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{k}} + \widetilde{\mathbf{m}}_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{k}}\epsilon_{\mathbf{4}} \\ & + (1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{4}})[(\nu_{\mathbf{i}1} + \nu_{\mathbf{i}2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11}) + \omega_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{1})}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11}))\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}} \\ & + \nu_{\mathbf{i}1}(\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}-\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}}) + \nu_{\mathbf{i}2}(\delta_{\mathbf{1}}/\delta_{11})(\epsilon_{\mathbf{1}}+\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}-\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}}+\epsilon_{\mathbf{1}}\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}})] \\ & = \widetilde{\mathbf{m}}_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{k}} + \widetilde{\mathbf{m}}_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{k}}(\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}}+2\epsilon_{\mathbf{4}}+\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}}\epsilon_{\mathbf{4}}) + \nu_{\mathbf{i}1}(\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}-\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}}+\epsilon_{\mathbf{4}}(\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}-\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}})) \\ & + \nu_{\mathbf{i}2}(\delta_{\mathbf{2}1}/\delta_{\mathbf{1}1})(\epsilon_{\mathbf{1}}+\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}}-\epsilon_{\mathbf{3}}+\epsilon_{\mathbf{1}}\epsilon_{\mathbf{2}})(1+\epsilon_{\mathbf{4}}) \ . \end{split}$$

Case c:  $\widetilde{M}_k$  is computed by

$$f\ell(\widetilde{M}_{k}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ I \\ f\ell[(v_{1}, v_{2}) + w^{(k+1)}b^{t}\widetilde{D}_{k}^{-1}] \end{bmatrix}.$$

Let  $b^{t}\widetilde{D}_{k}^{-1} = (\widetilde{\beta}_{1}, \widetilde{\beta}_{2})$ . Then

$$\mathrm{f}\ell(\widetilde{\mathbb{M}}_{\mathrm{i}k}) \,=\, (\mathrm{f}\ell(\nu_{\mathrm{i}1} \,+\, \omega_{\mathrm{i}}^{(k+1)}\widetilde{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{\mathrm{1}})\,,\,\, \mathrm{f}\ell(\nu_{\mathrm{i}2} \,+\, \omega_{\mathrm{i}}^{(k+1)}\widetilde{\boldsymbol{\beta}}_{\mathrm{2}})) \ .$$

Each of the components falls under the same analysis as case a. We obtain

$$\mathfrak{f}\ell(\widetilde{\mathfrak{m}}_{\mathtt{i}\mathtt{j}}) = \widetilde{\mathfrak{m}}_{\mathtt{i}\mathtt{j}} + \widetilde{\mathfrak{m}}_{\mathtt{i}\mathtt{j}}(\varepsilon_{1} + \varepsilon_{2} + \varepsilon_{1}\varepsilon_{2}) - v_{\mathtt{i}\mathtt{1}}(\varepsilon_{1} + \varepsilon_{1}\varepsilon_{2})$$

and

$${\tt f\ell(\widetilde{m}_{ij+1}) = \widetilde{m}_{ij+1} + \widetilde{m}_{ij+1}(\varepsilon_1' + \varepsilon_2' + \varepsilon_1' \varepsilon_2') - v_{i2}(\varepsilon_1' + \varepsilon_1' \varepsilon_2')} \ ,$$

where  $\tilde{M}_{ik} = (\tilde{m}_{ij}, \tilde{m}_{ij+1})$ .

 $\underline{\text{Case d}}\colon \ \widetilde{\textbf{M}}_{k} \text{ is computed by}$ 

$$f\ell(\widetilde{M}_{k}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ \delta_{21}/\delta_{11} \\ \delta_{31}/\delta_{11} \\ f\ell(v_{1} + v_{2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11}) + v_{3}(\delta_{31}/\delta_{11}) + w^{(k+2)}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11})) \end{bmatrix}$$

So

$$\begin{split} \mathrm{f}\ell(\widetilde{\mathbf{m}}_{\mathbf{i}k}) &= \mathrm{f}\ell(\nu_{\mathbf{i}1} + \nu_{\mathbf{i}2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11}) + \nu_{\mathbf{i}3}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11}) + \omega_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k}+2)}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11})) \\ &= \left[ \left\{ \left[ \nu_{\mathbf{i}1} + \nu_{\mathbf{i}2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11})(1+\epsilon_{1}) \right](1+\epsilon_{2}) + \nu_{\mathbf{i}3}(\delta_{31}/\delta_{11})(1+\epsilon_{3}) \right\}(1+\epsilon_{4}) + \omega_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k}+2)}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11})(1+\epsilon_{5}) \right](1+\epsilon_{6}) \end{split}$$

$$= \{ v_{i1} + v_{i2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11}) + v_{i3}(\delta_{31}/\delta_{11}) + \omega_{i}^{(k+2)}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11}) + v_{i1}(\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{2}\epsilon_{4}) + v_{i2}(\delta_{21}/\delta_{11})(\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{1}\epsilon_{2}) + \epsilon_{4}(\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{1}\epsilon_{2})) + v_{i3}(\delta_{31}/\delta_{11})(\epsilon_{3}+\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{3}\epsilon_{4}) + \omega_{i}^{(k+2)}(\beta_{1}/\delta_{11})\epsilon_{5} \} (1+\epsilon_{6})$$

$$= \widetilde{m}_{ik} + \widetilde{m}_{ik}\epsilon_{6} + v_{i1}[\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{6}+\epsilon_{2}\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{6}(\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{2}\epsilon_{4})] + v_{i2}(\frac{\delta_{21}}{\delta_{11}})[\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{6}+\epsilon_{1}\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{4}(\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{1}\epsilon_{2}) + \epsilon_{6}(\epsilon_{1}+\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{6}+\epsilon_{3}\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{6}(\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{3}\epsilon_{4})] + v_{i3}(\frac{\delta_{31}}{\delta_{11}})[\epsilon_{3}+\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{6}+\epsilon_{3}\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{6}(\epsilon_{2}+\epsilon_{4}+\epsilon_{3}\epsilon_{4})] + \omega_{i}^{(k+2)}(\frac{\beta_{1}}{\delta_{11}})(\epsilon_{5}+\epsilon_{6}+\epsilon_{5}\epsilon_{6})[v_{i1}+v_{i2}(\frac{\delta_{21}}{\delta_{11}}) + v_{i3}(\frac{\delta_{31}}{\delta_{11}}) + v_{i3}(\frac{\delta_{31}}{\delta_{11}})] + v_{i3}(\frac{\delta_{31}}{\delta_{11}}) + v_{i3}(\frac{\delta_{21}}{\delta_{11}}) + v_{i3}(\frac{\delta_{21}}{\delta_{21}}) +$$

Case e:  $\tilde{M}_k$  is computed by

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{f}\ell(\widetilde{\mathbf{M}}_{\mathbf{k}}) &= \begin{bmatrix} & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ (\delta_{31},\delta_{32})\widetilde{\mathbf{D}}_{\mathbf{k}}^{-1} & & & \\ & & & & \\ \mathbf{f}\ell[(\mathbf{v}_1,\mathbf{v}_2) + \mathbf{v}_3(\delta_{31},\delta_{32})\widetilde{\mathbf{D}}_{\mathbf{k}}^{-1} + \mathbf{w}^{(\mathbf{k}+2)}(\beta_1,\beta_2)\widetilde{\mathbf{D}}_{\mathbf{k}}^{-1}] \end{bmatrix} \end{split}$$

where we have partitioned  $V = (v_1, v_2, v_3)$ ,  $b^t = (\beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3)$ . Thus if we let  $(\widetilde{\delta}_{31}, \widetilde{\delta}_{32}) = (\delta_{31}, \delta_{32})\widetilde{D}_k^{-1}$ ,  $(\widetilde{\beta}_1, \widetilde{\beta}_2) = (\beta_1, \beta_2)\widetilde{D}_k^{-1}$  be the quantities computed in (2.9), we have

$$\mathrm{f}\ell(\widetilde{M}_{\mathbf{i}k}) = (\mathrm{f}\ell(\nu_{\mathbf{i}1} + \nu_{\mathbf{i}3}\widetilde{\delta}_{31} + \omega_{\mathbf{i}}^{(k+2)}\widetilde{\beta}_{1}), \ \mathrm{f}\ell(\nu_{\mathbf{i}2} + \nu_{\mathbf{i}3}\widetilde{\delta}_{32} + \omega_{\mathbf{i}}^{(k+2)}\widetilde{\beta}_{2})).$$

Then the components of  $\widetilde{\mathbf{M}}_{\mathbf{k}}$  fall under the same analysis as case b.

We have shown that if m is computed from the formulas given in part 2 a, b, c, d, and e using the computed quantities from part 1 and from the formation of  $\widetilde{D}$ , then

$$f\ell(\widetilde{m}_{ij}) = \widetilde{m}_{ij} + \widetilde{m}_{ij}\mu_{ij}(\varepsilon) + \nu_{ij}(\varepsilon)$$
.

Define  $\nu=\max_{i,k}|\nu_i^{(k)}|$ . Then taking absolute value, using the triangle inequality, and recalling that  $|\epsilon_k| \leq \epsilon$  gives

$$|\mu_{ij}(\varepsilon)| \leq \varepsilon(3+\varepsilon)$$
,

and

$$\begin{split} \left|\nu_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{j}}(\epsilon)\right| &\leq \begin{cases} \nu\epsilon(1+\epsilon) \text{ in case a,} \\ \nu(3\epsilon(1+\left|\frac{\delta_{21}}{\delta_{11}}\right|) + O(\epsilon^2)) \text{ in case b,} \end{cases} \\ \left|\nu_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{j}}(\epsilon)\right| &\leq \begin{cases} \nu\epsilon(1+\epsilon) \text{ in case c,} \\ \nu(\epsilon(3+4\left|\frac{\delta_{21}}{\delta_{11}}\right| + 3\left|\frac{\delta_{31}}{\delta_{11}}\right|) + O(\epsilon^2)) \text{ in case d,} \\ \nu(3\epsilon(1+\max(\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{31}\right|,\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{32}\right|) + O(\epsilon^2)) \text{ in case e.} \end{cases} \end{split}$$

By the properties of pivoting strategy  $\boldsymbol{S}_{_{\boldsymbol{\Omega}}}$  we have that

$$\left|\frac{\delta_{21}}{\delta_{11}}\right|, \left|\frac{\delta_{31}}{\delta_{11}}\right| < \frac{1}{\alpha}, \text{ and } \max(\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{31}\right|, \left|\widetilde{\delta}_{32}\right|) \leq \frac{1}{1-\alpha}.$$

Thus,

$$|v_{ij}(\varepsilon)| \leq v(\varepsilon(3 + \max[\frac{7}{\alpha}, \frac{1}{1-\alpha}]) + O(\varepsilon^2))$$

in all cases.

We now return to equations (1.5). Regarding (1.5)(i) we have shown that  $\Delta \widetilde{M}_{ij} = \widetilde{M}_{ij} \mu_{ij}(\epsilon) + \nu_{ij}(\epsilon)$ , with bounds for  $\mu_{ij}(\epsilon)$  and  $\nu_{ij}(\epsilon)$  given in Lemma (3.4). We also have that  $\Delta \widetilde{D} = E$  in Lemma (3.3) is block diagonal with the same block structure as  $\widetilde{D}$ . Using the analysis given in [3, p. 667] we see that in (1.5)(i) and (iv) that

$$|\delta_2 \hat{M}_{ij}|, |\delta_1 \hat{M}_{ij}| \le \frac{3}{2} \epsilon [1 + O(\epsilon)] (n-2+1-j) |\hat{M}_{ij}|,$$

and in (1.5)(iii) we have

$$|\delta \hat{D}_{ii}| \leq |\hat{D}_{ii}|\epsilon$$

if D<sub>ii</sub> is a one-by-one block; otherwise, from [3]

$$\begin{pmatrix} |\delta \hat{D}_{ii}| & |(\delta \hat{D})_{i,i+1}| \\ |(\delta \hat{D})_{i,i+1}| & |(\delta \hat{D})_{i+1,i+1}| \end{pmatrix} \leq \varepsilon [1+O(\varepsilon)] |\hat{D}_{i+1,i}| \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & 1 \\ 1 & \alpha \end{pmatrix} .$$

Finally, we have that the error matrix S, defined in Lemma (3.2) and discussed in the remarks following it, is bounded by

$$\begin{split} \|S\|_{\infty} &\leq \{2\|T\|_{\infty} \|p\|_{\infty} \|w\|_{\infty} + \|T\|_{\infty}^{2} \|p\|_{\infty}^{2}\} |\sigma| \\ &\leq \{2n(n+1)\gamma \max|m_{i,j}|\max|w_{i}^{(k)}| \|w\|_{\infty} \epsilon \\ &+ \epsilon^{2} [n(n+1)]^{2} \gamma^{2} \max|w_{i}^{(k)}|^{2}\} |\sigma| , \end{split}$$

where  $\gamma$  is the constant appearing in Lemma (3.2). The matrix  $G(\epsilon)$  in (1.7)(i) and (iii) is given by  $G = (v_{ij}(\epsilon))$ . (Note that G is lower triangular.)

We have the bound for F given by

$$\begin{aligned} \| \mathbf{F} \|_{\infty} &\leq 2 \max_{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{k}} | \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k})} | \epsilon (3 + \max(\frac{7}{\alpha}, \frac{1}{1 - \alpha})) \| \widetilde{\mathbf{MDM}}^{\mathbf{t}} \|_{\infty} \\ &+ 2 \max(|\mathbf{D}_{\mathbf{i}\mathbf{j}}|, \alpha | \beta_{\mathbf{k}} (\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{1}}^{(\mathbf{k})})^{2} |, 2 | \beta_{\mathbf{k}} \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k})} \mathbf{\omega}_{\mathbf{j}}^{(\mathbf{k})} |, \\ & | \sigma_{\mathbf{k}} (\mathbf{\omega}_{\mathbf{i}}^{(\mathbf{k})})^{2} |) 49 \epsilon | \widetilde{\mathbf{M}} \|_{\infty} | \widetilde{\mathbf{M}}^{\mathbf{t}} \|_{\infty} \\ &+ \epsilon [1 + O(\epsilon)] \| \mathbf{MDM}^{\mathbf{t}} \|_{\infty} + \| \mathbf{S} \|_{\infty} + O(\epsilon^{2}) . \end{aligned}$$

We have already mentioned that the  $|\nu_i^{(k)}|$  and  $|\omega_j^{(k)}|$ , and  $|S|_{\infty}$  may grow with n for <u>ill-conditioned</u> matrices M. However, the computational evidence indicates that the usual remarks concerning the solution of triangular systems apply: in practice large growth does not occur in these quantities.

In order to guarantee stability we must also show that the  $\sigma_k$ 's and  $\beta_k$ 's are bounded. We shall do this by showing that the growth of  $\sigma_k$  is bounded at each step of the algorithm. This is sufficient since it can be demonstrated that the growth of  $\beta_{k+1}$  is bounded as long as the growth of  $\sigma_{k+1}$  is bounded.

It will be necessary to impose an additional condition on the acceptance of a  $1\!\times\!1$  pivot. The number  $\delta$  in

$$\left(\begin{array}{cc} \delta & \beta \\ \beta & \sigma \end{array}\right)$$

will be accepted as a 1×1 pivot if  $|\delta| \ge \alpha |\beta|$  as before, or if  $|\sigma\delta| > \alpha \beta^2$ . This does not affect any of the preceding analysis.

We shall begin by establishing several preliminary lemmas.

П

Lemma (3.5). Let A be symmetric and suppose that A = MDM<sup>t</sup>. Let the eigenvalues of A be  $\lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \ldots \leq \lambda_n$ , and let the eigenvalues of D be  $\mu_1 \leq \mu_2 \leq \ldots \leq \mu_n$ . Let k be the index such that  $\lambda_j \leq 0$  for  $1 \leq j \leq k$ , and  $\lambda_j > 0$  for k < j < n. Then  $\lambda_j \leq c\mu_j$  for  $1 \leq j \leq k$ , and  $\lambda_j \geq c\mu_j$  for  $k < j \leq n$ , where  $\sqrt{c}$  is the smallest singular value of M.

Proof: By the mini-max theorem

$$\lambda_{j} = \min_{\substack{\dim(S)=j \\ \text{dim}(S)=j}} \left[ \max_{\substack{x \in S \\ x \neq 0}} \frac{\frac{x^{t}Ax}{x^{t}x}}{x^{t}x} \right]$$

$$= \min_{\substack{\dim(S)=j \\ \text{s} \neq 0}} \left[ \max_{\substack{s \in S \\ s \neq 0}} \frac{\frac{s^{t}Ds}{s^{t}M^{-1}M^{-t}s}}{s^{t}M^{-1}M^{-t}s} \right]$$

$$= \min_{\substack{\dim(S)=j \\ \text{s} \neq 0}} \left[ \max_{\substack{s \in S \\ s \neq 0}} \left( \frac{s^{t}s}{s^{t}M^{-1}M^{-t}s} \right) \right].$$

Since  $\frac{s^t s}{s^t M^{-1} M^{-t} s} \ge c > 0$ , we have for  $j \le k$  that  $\lambda_j \le c \min_{\substack{d \text{im}(S) = i \\ s \ne 0}} \left[ \max_{\substack{s \in S \\ s \ne 0}} \frac{s^t D s}{s^t s} \right] = c\mu_j.$ 

Similarly, for j > k we have  $\lambda_{j} \geq c\mu_{j}$ .

For the following discussion we shall also need to know the smallest singular value of certain lower triangular matrices in order to apply Lemma (3.5).

<u>Lemma (3.6)</u>. If  $M = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \gamma & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ , then the smallest singular value of M is  $\sqrt{c}$ , where

$$c \geq \frac{1}{\gamma^2 + 2}.$$

If M =  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \gamma_0 & 1 & 0 \\ \gamma_1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ , then the smallest singular value of M is  $\sqrt{c}$ , where  $c \ge \frac{1}{\gamma_0^2 + \gamma_1^2 + 2}.$ 

<u>Proof</u>: The smallest singular value of  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \gamma & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  is  $\sqrt{c}$ , where

$$c = (\gamma^2 + 2 - \sqrt{\gamma^4 + 4\gamma^2})/2$$
.

The smallest singular value of  $\left(\begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \gamma_0 & 1 & 0 \\ \gamma_1 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$  is  $\sqrt{c},$  where

$$c = \left(\gamma_0^2 + \gamma_1^2 + 2 - \sqrt{(\gamma_0^2 + \gamma_1^2)^2 + 4(\gamma_0^2 + \gamma_1^2)}\right)/2.$$

If  $c = (a + 2 - \sqrt{a^2 + 4a})/2$  with a > 0, then

$$c = \frac{(a+2)^2 - (a^2+4a)}{2(a+2+\sqrt{a^2+4a})}$$

$$= \frac{2}{a+2+\sqrt{a^2+4a}}$$

$$\geq \frac{2}{a+2+\sqrt{a^2+4a+4}}$$

$$= \frac{2}{2(a+2)} = \frac{1}{a+2}.$$

The lemma follows from this inequality.

It will also be of interest in the following discussion to bound the  $\infty$ -norm of the inverse of a 2×2 block.

Lemma (3.7). Suppose that  $D = \begin{pmatrix} \delta_{11} & \delta_{21} \\ \delta_{21} & \delta_{22} \end{pmatrix}$ , with  $\alpha | \delta_{21} | > \max(|\delta_{11}|, |\delta_{22}|)$ . Then

$$\|\mathbf{p}^{-1}\|_{\infty} \leq \frac{1}{(1-\alpha)|\delta_{21}|}$$
.

Proof:

$$\begin{split} \|\mathbf{D}^{-1}\|_{\infty} &= \frac{1}{|\Delta|} \|\mathbf{D}\|_{\infty} , \\ \text{where } |\Delta| &= |\delta_{11}\delta_{22} - \delta_{21}^2| \ge \delta_{21}^2 - \alpha^2 \delta_{21}^2 = \delta_{21}^2 (1 - \alpha^2) . \\ \|\mathbf{D}\|_{\infty} &= |\delta_{21}| + \max(|\delta_{11}|, |\delta_{22}|) \\ &\le (1 + \alpha) |\delta_{21}| . \end{split}$$

Thus 
$$\|D^{-1}\|_{\infty} \leq \frac{(1+\alpha)}{(1-\alpha^2)} \left(\frac{1}{|\delta_{21}|}\right) = \frac{1}{(1-\alpha)|\delta_{21}|}$$
.

Two more lemmas are needed before we can establish the boundedness of the  $\boldsymbol{\sigma}_{\textbf{k}}.$ 

<u>Lemma (3.8)</u>. Let  $B \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  be symmetric and nonsingular with eigenvalues  $\lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \ldots \leq \lambda_n$ , where  $n \geq 2$ . Let  $z \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , and  $\eta \in \mathbb{R}$ . Let

$$B^{\dagger} = B + \eta zz^{\dagger}$$
.

Then n max  $|B_{ij}'| \ge \lambda$ , where  $\lambda = \min_{1 \le j \le n} |\lambda_j|$ .

<u>Proof</u>: Let B' have eigenvalues  $\mu_1 \le \mu_2 \le \dots \le \mu_n$ . From Lemma (2.2) of Chapter II,

$$\eta > 0 \Rightarrow \lambda_1 \leq \mu_1 \leq \lambda_n \leq \mu_n$$
,

while

$$\eta < 0 \Rightarrow \mu_1 \leq \lambda_1 \leq \mu_n \leq \lambda_n \ .$$

If  $\lambda_1 > 0$ , then  $|\mu_n| \ge |\lambda_1|$ .

If  $\lambda_1<0$  and  $\lambda_n>0$ , then  $|\mu_n|\geq |\lambda_n|$  when  $\eta>0$  and  $|\mu_1|\geq |\lambda_1|$  when  $\eta<0$ .

If  $\lambda_n < 0$ , then  $|\mu_1| \ge |\lambda_n|$ .

We conclude that

$$\mu = \max_{1 \le j \le n} |\mu_j| \ge \lambda .$$

By the standard norm inequalities we obtain

$$n \max |B_{ij}^{\dagger}| \geq \mu$$

and the result is established.

<u>Lemma (3.9)</u>. Suppose that the k-th step of the updating algorithm has resulted in

$$C^{(k)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v & w \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \delta & \beta \\ \beta & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v & w \end{pmatrix}^{t},$$

with  $\sigma \neq 0$ ,  $|\delta| < \alpha |\beta|$  and  $|\sigma \delta| \leq \alpha \beta^2$ . Then

$$\beta^{2} \geq \frac{|\sigma| |\det \hat{D}_{1}| |1 + \sigma_{0}z^{t}A^{-1}z|}{(1+\alpha) |\det \hat{D}^{(k)}| (|\sigma||w^{t}\hat{M}_{2}^{-t}\hat{D}_{2}^{-1}\hat{M}_{2}^{-1}w| + 1 + \frac{1}{1-\alpha})},$$

$$M = (\hat{M}_{1}, \hat{M}_{2}), \quad D = \begin{pmatrix} \hat{D}_{1} & 0 \\ 0 & \hat{D}_{0} \end{pmatrix},$$

where

$$QAQ^{t} = (\hat{M}_{1}, \hat{M}_{2}) \begin{pmatrix} \hat{D}_{1} & 0 \\ 0 & \hat{D}_{2} \end{pmatrix} (\hat{M}_{1}, \hat{M}_{2})^{t},$$

and  $\widetilde{D}^{(k)}$  is that portion of  $\widetilde{D}$  obtained up to step k. Here  $\sigma_0$  is the starting " $\sigma$ ", and  $\sigma$  is the modified " $\sigma$ " after k steps of the algorithm.

At the k-th step we have

$$\begin{split} \widetilde{Q}^{(k)} \widetilde{A} \widetilde{Q}^{(k)} t &= \widetilde{M}^{(k)} \widetilde{D}^{(k)} \widetilde{M}^{(k)} t + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v & w \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \delta & \beta \\ \beta & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ v & w \end{pmatrix}^{t} + \widehat{M}_{2} \widehat{D}_{2} \widehat{M}_{2}^{t} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \widetilde{M}^{(k)} \begin{vmatrix} 0 & | \\ | & 1 & | \widehat{M}_{2} \\ | & v & | \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \widetilde{D}^{(k)} & 0_{2} & 0 \\ 0 & (\delta - \beta^{2} / \sigma) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \widehat{D}_{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \widetilde{M}^{(k)} \begin{vmatrix} 0 & | \\ | & 1 & | \widehat{M}_{2} \\ | & v & | \end{pmatrix}^{t} \\ &+ \sigma \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \beta / \sigma \\ w + \beta / \sigma v \end{pmatrix} (0, \beta / \sigma, w^{t} + \beta / \sigma v^{t}) . \end{split}$$

Now,  $\det(A + \sigma_0 z z^t) = \det A(1 + \sigma_0 z^t A^{-1} z)$ . Also, if  $p = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \beta/\sigma \\ \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$ , and

$$B = \left( \begin{array}{c|cc} M^{(k)} & 0 & | & \\ 1 & | & \hat{M}_{2} \\ v & | & v \end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{ccc} \widetilde{D}^{(k)} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & (\delta - \beta^{2} / \sigma) & 0 & \\ 0 & 0 & \hat{D}_{2} \end{array} \right) \left( \begin{array}{ccc} \widetilde{M}^{(k)} & | & 0 & | & \\ 1 & | & \hat{M}_{2} \\ | & v & | & \hat{M}_{2} \end{array} \right) ,$$

then

$$\begin{split} \det A(1+\sigma_0 z^t A^{-1}z) &= \det(B+\sigma p p^t) \\ &= \det B(1+\sigma p^t B^{-1}p) \\ &= \det \widetilde{D}^{(k)} \left(\delta - \frac{\beta^2}{\sigma}\right) \det \widehat{D}_2 (1+\sigma p^t B^{-1}p) \ . \end{split}$$

Thus

(3.13) 
$$|\det A| |1 + \sigma_0 z^t A^{-1} z| = |\det \widetilde{D}^{(k)}| |\det \widehat{D}_2| |\delta - \frac{\beta^2}{\sigma}| |1 + \sigma_p^t B^{-1} p|$$
.  
Since  $|\delta \sigma| \leq \alpha \beta^2$ , we have

$$|\delta \sigma - \beta^2| \ge \beta^2 - |\delta \sigma| \ge (1-\alpha)\beta^2,$$

and

$$|\delta\sigma-\beta^2| \leq |\delta\sigma| + \beta^2 \leq (\alpha+1)\beta^2.$$

Also, one can show that

$$\begin{pmatrix}
M^{(k)} & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | & 0 & | &$$

where we use  $\hat{M}_2^{-1}$  to mean the inverse of the unit lower triangular matrix that occupies the lower triangle of  $\hat{M}_2$ . Thus if  $\phi = w^t \hat{M}_2^{-t} \hat{D}_2^{-1} \hat{M}_2^{-1} w$ , we have

$$p^{t}B^{-1}p = \frac{\beta^{2}}{\sigma^{2}} \frac{1}{\left(\delta - \frac{\beta^{2}}{\sigma}\right)} + \phi .$$

Hence

$$|p^{t}B^{-1}p| \leq \frac{\beta^{2}}{|\sigma||\sigma\delta - \beta^{2}|} + |\phi|$$

$$\leq \frac{1}{|\sigma|(1-\alpha)} + |\phi|$$

by (3.14). Using (3.15) in (3.13) gives

(3.17) 
$$\frac{1}{|\sigma|} (1+\alpha)\beta^{2} \geq |\delta - \beta^{2}/\sigma| = \frac{|\det A||1 + \sigma_{0}z^{t}A^{-1}z|}{|\det D^{(k)}||\det \hat{D}_{2}||1 + \sigma p^{t}B^{-1}p|}.$$

Therefore, using (3.16) in (3.17) gives

(3.18) 
$$\beta^{2} \geq \frac{|\sigma|}{(1+\alpha)} \frac{|\det \hat{D}_{1}||1 + \sigma_{0}z^{t}A^{-1}z|}{|\det \tilde{D}^{(k)}|(|\sigma||\phi| + 1 + \frac{1}{1-\alpha})}.$$

This is the desired result.

Observe that the quantities in (3.18) are independent of the updating process except for  $|\sigma|$ , and  $|\det \widetilde{D}^{(k)}|$ . Now we are ready to prove

Theorem (3.1). Suppose that the k-th step of the updating algorithm has resulted in

$$C^{(k)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v & w \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \delta & \beta \\ \beta & \sigma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v & w \end{pmatrix}^{t},$$

with  $|\delta| < \alpha |\beta|$ , and  $|\sigma \delta| \le \alpha \beta^2$ . Then the next step of the algorithm will produce a  $\sigma'$  of the form

$$\sigma' = \sigma - b_k^{t} \widetilde{D}_k^{-1} b_k$$

with  $|\sigma'|$  bounded.

As we have already seen in Chapter II the updating process is equivalent to forming

(3.19) 
$$C^{(k+1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & w_0 \\ v_1 & I & w_1 \\ v_2 & V & w_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} n_1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & D' & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & n_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & w_0 \\ v_1 & I & w_1 \\ v_2 & V & w_2 \end{pmatrix}^{t},$$

where D' and  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ I \\ V \end{pmatrix}$  are, respectively, the next diagonal block of D and the corresponding column of M. In (3.19)  $w_0 = -\gamma$ ,  $\begin{pmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \end{pmatrix} = v + \gamma w$ , and  $\begin{pmatrix} w_1 \\ w_2 \end{pmatrix} = w - \gamma v$ .

The next step is to form

$$C^{(k+1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & | & w_0 \\ 0 & I & | & w_1 \\ \hat{v}_2 & V & | & w_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{D} & 0 \\ 0 & \eta_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & | & w_0 \\ 0 & I & | & w_1 \\ \hat{v}_2 & V & | & w_2 \end{pmatrix}^{t},$$

where 
$$\hat{\mathbf{D}} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v_1 & \mathbf{I} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{n}_2 & 0 \\ 0 & \mathbf{D'} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v_1 & \mathbf{I} \end{pmatrix}^{\mathsf{t}}$$
, and  $\hat{\mathbf{v}}_2 = \mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{V} \mathbf{v}_1$ .

Then we form

$$c^{(k+1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & | & 0 \\ 0 & I & | & 0 \\ \hat{v}_2 & v & | & \hat{w}_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{p} + \eta_2 b b^t & | & \eta_2 b \\ - - - - - - + - & | & \eta_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & | & 0 \\ 0 & I & | & 0 \\ \hat{v}_2 & v & | & \hat{w}_2 \end{pmatrix}^t,$$

where 
$$b = \begin{pmatrix} w_0 \\ w_1 \end{pmatrix}$$
, and  $\hat{w}_2 = w_2 - \hat{v}_2 w_0 - Vw_1$ .

Finally, we pivot and obtain the updated diagonal block  $\widetilde{D}_{k+1}$ . Let  $\overline{D} = \widehat{D} + n_2 bb^t$ , and let  $\xi = \max |\overline{D}_{ij}|$ . Then  $|\widetilde{D}_k| \ge \alpha \xi$  when  $\widetilde{D}_{k+1}$  is  $1 \times 1$ . If it is  $2 \times 2$ ,  $\|\widetilde{D}_{k+1}^{-1}\|_{\infty} \le \frac{1}{\xi(1-\alpha)}$ . To avoid cumbersome notation we shall let  $B = \widetilde{D}_{k+1}$ .

The factoring of  $\begin{pmatrix} \overline{D} & \eta_2 b \\ \eta_2 b^t & \eta_2 \end{pmatrix}$  gives an updated  $\eta = \eta_2 - \eta_2^2 b_1^t B^{-1} b_1$ ,

where  $b_1$  consists of components of b. It can be shown that  $\hat{w}_2 = (1+\gamma^2)(w_2'-Vw_1')$ , where  $w = \begin{pmatrix} w_1' \\ w_2' \end{pmatrix}$ . Comparing this with the updating algorithm described in Chapter II will show that

(3.20) 
$$\sigma' = (1+\gamma^2)^2 \eta .$$

Now, 
$$|\eta| \le |\eta_2| + \eta_2^2 |b_1^{\mathsf{t}} B^{-1} b_1|$$
  
 $\le |\eta_2| + 3\eta_2^2 ||b_1||_{\infty}^2 ||B^{-1}||_{\infty}.$ 

Hence, if  $\alpha \ge 1/2$  then

(3.21) 
$$|\eta| \leq |\eta_2| + \frac{3\eta_2^2 \|b_1\|_{\infty}^2}{\xi(1-\alpha)} .$$

Let  $\sqrt{\theta}$  be the smallest singular value of  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ v_1 & I \end{pmatrix}$ . From Lemma (3.6),

$$\theta \ge 1/(\|v_1\|^2 + 2)$$
.

By Lemma (3.8) we have that  $3\xi \ge |\lambda|$  where  $\lambda$  is the smallest eigenvalue of  $\hat{D}$  (in absolute value). However, Lemma (3.5) implies  $|\lambda| \ge \theta$  min( $|\eta_1|, |\mu|$ ),

and thus

(3.23) 
$$\xi \ge \frac{1}{3} \theta \min(|\eta_1|, |\mu|)$$

where  $\mu$  is the smallest eigenvalue of D  $^{\dagger}$  (in absolute value). Finally we have that

$$(3.24) \qquad \qquad v \equiv \|\mathbf{b}_1\|_{\infty} \leq \|\mathbf{b}\|_{\infty} \leq \max(|\gamma|, \|\mathbf{w}\|_{\infty} + |\gamma| \|\mathbf{v}\|_{\infty}).$$

Combining inequalities (3.21)-(3.24) gives

(3.25) 
$$|\eta| \leq |\eta_2| + \frac{v^2 9 \eta_2^2 (\|v_1\|^2 + 2)}{\min(|\eta_1|, |\mu|) (1 - \alpha)} .$$

Since  $\|\mathbf{w}\|_{\infty}$  and  $\|\mathbf{v}\|_{\infty}$  are bounded we have that  $v^2 = O(\gamma^2)$  and  $\|\mathbf{v}_1\|^2 = O(\gamma^2)$ . Thus it is sufficient to bound the quantity

(3.26) 
$$\left| \frac{\eta_2 \gamma^4}{\min(|\eta_1|,|\mu|)} \right|.$$

Suppose that  $|\beta| \ge |\sigma|$ . Since  $\gamma = (\sigma - \mu_2)/\beta$  we have

$$|\gamma| \leq \left| \frac{(\sigma+\delta) - \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma+\delta)\sqrt{(\sigma-\delta)^2 + 4\beta^2}}{2\beta} \right| + 1$$

$$\leq \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \alpha + \sqrt{(1+\alpha)^2 + 4} \right) + 1.$$

Thus (3.26) is bounded since  $\left|\frac{\eta_2}{\eta_1}\right| \leq 1$  and  $|\mu|$  is fixed. Therefore, we shall assume that  $|\beta| < |\sigma|$ . Now,

$$|\eta_2| = \left|\frac{\delta\sigma - \beta^2}{\eta_1}\right| \left(\frac{1}{1+\gamma^2}\right)^2$$
.

However,

$$\left| \frac{\delta \sigma - \beta^2}{\eta_1} \right| = \mu_2 (1 + \gamma^2) = \mu_2 + \mu_2 \gamma^2$$
.

Let 
$$\psi = \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma + \delta) \sqrt{(\sigma - \delta)^2 + 4\beta^2}$$
. Then

$$\frac{\gamma^2 \mu_2}{\sigma} = \frac{\left[ (\sigma - \delta) + \psi \right]^2 \left[ (\sigma - \delta) - \psi + 2\delta \right]}{8\beta^2 \sigma}$$

$$= \left[ \frac{(\sigma - \delta) + \psi}{2\sigma} \right] \left[ \frac{(\sigma - \delta)^2 - \psi^2}{4\beta^2} \right] + \frac{2\delta \left[ (\sigma - \delta) + \psi \right]^2}{8\beta^2 \sigma}.$$

Thus

$$\left|\frac{\gamma^2 \mu_2}{\sigma}\right| \leq \tau + \left|\frac{\delta \sigma}{\beta^2}\right| \tau^2 ,$$

where  $\tau = \left| \frac{(\sigma - \delta) + \psi}{2\sigma} \right|$ . Observe that

$$\tau \leq \frac{1}{2} \left[ 1 + \left| \frac{\delta}{\sigma} \right| + \sqrt{\left( 1 + \left| \frac{\delta}{\sigma} \right| \right)^2 + 4 \left| \frac{\beta}{\sigma} \right|^2} \right]$$

$$\leq \frac{1}{2} \left[ 1 + \alpha + \sqrt{\left( 1 + \alpha \right)^2 + 4} \right].$$

By assumption  $\left| \frac{\delta \sigma}{\beta^2} \right| \leq \alpha < 1$  so that

$$\left|\frac{\gamma^2 \mu_2}{\sigma}\right| \leq \tau + \tau^2.$$

We also have that

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \mu_2 \right| &= \frac{1}{2} \left| \left[ (\sigma + \delta) - \psi \right] \right| &= \frac{1}{2} \left| \left[ (\sigma - \delta) - \psi + 2\delta \right] \right| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{2} \frac{4\beta^2}{\left| (\sigma - \delta) + \psi \right|} + \left| \delta \right| . \end{aligned}$$

Now,

$$|(\sigma-\delta) + \psi| = |\sigma-\delta| + \sqrt{|\sigma-\delta|^2 + 4\beta^2} \ge 2|\sigma-\delta|$$
.

Thus,

$$|\mu_2| \leq \frac{\beta^2}{|\alpha-\delta|} + |\delta| \leq \frac{|\beta|}{(1-\alpha)} + |\delta|$$
.

Therefore,

$$|\eta_2| \leq (1+\gamma^2)^{-2} \left( \frac{|\beta|}{1-\alpha} + |\delta| + |\sigma|(\tau+\tau^2) \right).$$

It follows that

$$\left| \frac{\gamma^{4} \eta_{2}}{\mu} \right| \leq \frac{1}{\mu} \left( \frac{|\beta|}{1-\alpha} + |\delta| + |\sigma| (\tau + \tau^{2}) \right)$$

$$\leq \frac{|\sigma|}{\mu} \left( \frac{1}{1-\alpha} + \alpha + \tau + \tau^{2} \right).$$

To bound  $\left| \frac{\eta_2 \gamma^4}{\eta_1} \right|$  we consider

$$\left|\frac{\eta_2}{\eta_1}\right| = \left|\frac{\delta\sigma - \beta^2}{\mu_1^2}\right| \leq \frac{(1+\alpha)\beta^2}{\mu_1^2} .$$

But

$$\mu_{1}^{2} = (\sigma + \delta)^{2} + 2|\sigma + \delta|\sqrt{(\sigma - \delta)^{2} + 4\beta^{2}} + (\sigma - \delta)^{2} + 4\beta^{2}$$

$$\geq 2\sigma^{2} + 2\delta^{2} + 2(\sigma^{2} - \delta^{2}) + (\sigma - \delta)^{2} + 4\beta^{2}$$

$$= 5\sigma^{2} - 2\sigma\delta + \delta^{2} + 4\beta^{2}$$

$$\geq 5\sigma^{2} + (4 - 2\alpha)\beta^{2} \geq 5\sigma^{2}.$$

Thus

$$\left|\frac{\mathsf{n}_2}{\mathsf{n}_1}\right| \leq \frac{(1+\alpha)}{5} \frac{\beta^2}{\sigma^2} .$$

But

$$\gamma^{2} = \left(\frac{\mu_{1} - \delta}{\beta}\right)^{2} = \frac{\sigma^{2}}{\beta^{2}} \left[\frac{(\sigma - \delta) + \psi}{2\sigma}\right]^{2}$$

$$\leq \frac{\sigma^{2}}{4\beta^{2}} \left[1 + \alpha + \sqrt{(1 + \alpha)^{2} + 4}\right]^{2}.$$

It follows that

$$\left| \frac{\gamma^{4} \eta_{2}}{\eta_{1}} \right| \leq \frac{\sigma^{4}}{16\beta^{4}} \left| \frac{\eta_{2}}{\eta_{1}} \right| \left[ 1 + \alpha + \sqrt{(1+\alpha)^{2} + 4} \right]^{4}$$

$$\leq \frac{\sigma^{2}}{80\beta^{2}} (1+\alpha) \left[ 1 + \alpha + \sqrt{(1+\alpha)^{2} + 4} \right]^{4}$$

Using the same notation as in Lemma (3.9) and applying that result gives

$$\frac{\sigma^2}{\beta^2} \leq \frac{(1+\alpha)|\sigma||\det \widetilde{D}^{(k)}|(|\sigma||\phi|+1+\frac{1}{1-\alpha})}{|\det \widehat{D}_1||1+\sigma_0 z^t A^{-1}z|}.$$

Observe that if the previous  $\sigma$ 's and  $\beta$ 's are bounded then  $\left|\det \; \widetilde{D}^{(k)} \right|$  is bounded. Thus we have bounds

$$\left|\frac{\gamma^4 \eta_2}{\mu}\right| \leq K_1 \text{ and } \left|\frac{\gamma^4 \eta_2}{\eta_1}\right| \leq K_2$$
.

This gives

$$|\eta| \le |\eta_2| (1 + \max(K_1, K_2))$$
.

But

$$|\eta_2| \leq |\sigma| (1+\gamma^2)^{-2} \left[ \frac{1}{1-\alpha} + \alpha + \tau + \tau^2 \right]$$
.

Since  $\sigma' = (1+\gamma^2)^2 \eta_2$  we have

$$|\sigma'| \leq |\sigma| \left(\frac{1}{1-\alpha} + \alpha + \tau + \tau^2\right) (1 + \max(K_1, K_2))$$
.

This concludes the proof.

Theorem (3.1) provides a bound on the growth of  $\sigma$  when pivoting is done. The following theorem provides a bound in the remaining cases.

Theorem (3.2). If the algorithm updates a 2×2 block and accepts the updated block as a 2×2 pivot then

$$|\sigma'| \leq |\sigma| \left(1 + \frac{2}{1-\alpha}\right)$$

or if a lxl pivot is accepted from the updated block then

$$|\sigma'| \leq |\sigma| \left(1 + \frac{4\alpha}{1-\alpha}\right)$$
.

If  $\delta$  is accepted from  $\begin{pmatrix} \delta & \beta \\ \beta & \sigma \end{pmatrix}$  as a 1×1 block then  $\left|\sigma'\right| \leq \left|\sigma\right| + \max(\left|\sigma\right|, \left|\beta\right|)/\alpha \ .$ 

Proof:

Case 1. If  $\delta$  is accepted as a 1×1 block as a result of

$$\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\delta & \beta \\
\beta & \sigma
\right)$$

satisfying  $|\delta| \ge \alpha |\beta|$ , or  $|\delta\sigma| > \alpha \beta^2$  then

 $\sigma' = \sigma - \beta^2/\delta .$ 

Hence

$$|\sigma'| \leq |\sigma| + \left|\frac{\beta^2}{\delta}\right|$$

$$\leq |\sigma| + |\sigma|/\alpha = |\sigma|(1 + 1/\alpha),$$

or  $|\sigma'| \leq |\sigma| + |\beta|/\alpha$ .

Case 2. Suppose that a 2×2 block is updated and accepted as a 2×2 pivot. If the old block has elements  $\delta_{ij}$  then the updated block has elements of the form  $\widetilde{\delta}_{ij} = \delta_{ij} + \sigma w_i w_j$ . The conditions that must be satisfied are  $\alpha |\delta_{21}| > \max(|\delta_{11}|, |\delta_{22}|)$ , and  $\alpha |\widetilde{\delta}_{21}| > \max(|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}|, |\widetilde{\delta}_{22}|)$ . Let  $\widetilde{D}$  represent this 2×2 updated block, and let  $w^t = (w_1, w_2)$ . Without loss of generality we assume  $\|w\|_{\infty} = |w_1|$ . Then  $\|w^t\|_{\infty} \le 2|w_1|$ . In this case we have

$$\sigma' = \sigma - \sigma^2 w^t \tilde{D}^{-1} w$$

so that

$$|\sigma'| \le |\sigma| (1 + 2|\sigma| |w_1|^2 ||\widetilde{D}^{-1}||_{\infty}).$$

From Lemma (3.7),  $\|\tilde{\mathbf{D}}^{-1}\|_{\infty} \leq \frac{1}{(1-\alpha)|\tilde{\delta}_{21}|}$ .

Now,

$$|\sigma w_1^2| - |\delta_{11}| \le |\delta_{11}^2 + \sigma w_1^2| < \alpha |\delta_{21}^2 + \sigma w_2^2 w_1|$$
.

Thus

$$\begin{split} |\sigma w_{1}^{2}| & \leq \alpha |\widetilde{\delta}_{21}| + |\delta_{11}| \\ & \leq \alpha (|\widetilde{\delta}_{21}| + |\delta_{21}|) \\ & \leq \alpha (|\widetilde{\delta}_{21}| + |\delta_{21}| + \sigma w_{2}w_{1}| + |\sigma w_{2}w_{1}|) \\ & \leq 2\alpha |\widetilde{\delta}_{21}| + \alpha |\sigma w_{1}^{2}| . \end{split}$$

Hence  $(1-\alpha) |\sigma w_1^2| \le 2\alpha |\delta_{21}|$ , and we have

$$|\sigma'| \leq |\sigma| \left( 1 + 2 \left( \frac{2\alpha}{1-\alpha} \right) \frac{|\sigma w_1^2|}{|\sigma w_1^2|} \right)$$

$$= |\sigma| \left( 1 + \frac{4\alpha}{1-\alpha} \right)$$

 $\underline{\text{Case 3}}$ . A 2×2 block is updated and it is found that

 $\alpha |\widetilde{\delta}_{21}| \leq \max(|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}|, |\widetilde{\delta}_{22}|). \quad \text{We use the same notation as for Case 2.}$  Without loss of generality we assume that  $|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}| \geq |\widetilde{\delta}_{22}|$  (otherwise  $\widetilde{\delta}_{22}$  is brought to the  $\widetilde{\delta}_{11}$  position). Then

$$\sigma' = \sigma - \frac{\sigma^2 w_1^2}{\widetilde{\delta}_{11}}.$$

Now

$$|\delta_{11} + \sigma w_1^2| \ge |\sigma w_1^2| - |\delta_{11}|$$

so that

$$|\sigma w_1^2| \leq |\widetilde{\delta}_{11}| + |\delta_{11}|.$$

Thus

$$\frac{\left|\sigma w_{1}^{2}\right|}{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}\right|} \leq 1 + \frac{\left|\delta_{11}\right|}{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}\right|}.$$

But

$$\begin{split} |\delta_{11}| &\leq \alpha |\delta_{21}| \\ &\leq \alpha (|\delta_{21} + \sigma w_2 w_1| + |\sigma w_2 w_1|) \\ &= \alpha (|\widetilde{\delta}_{21}| + |\sigma w_2 w_1|) . \end{split}$$

Thus

(3.27) 
$$\frac{\left|\sigma w_{1}^{2}\right| - \alpha \left|\sigma w_{2} w_{1}\right|}{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}\right|} \leq 1 + \alpha \frac{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{21}\right|}{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}\right|} \leq 2 .$$

A similar argument shows that

$$\frac{\left|\sigma w_{2}^{2}\right|}{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}\right|} \leq \frac{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{22}\right| + \left|\delta_{22}\right|}{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}\right|} \leq \left[1 + \alpha \left(\frac{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{21}\right| + \left|\sigma w_{2}w_{1}\right|}{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}\right|}\right)\right].$$

Thus

$$(3.28) \qquad \frac{\left|\sigma w_{2}^{2}\right| - \alpha \left|\sigma w_{2} w_{1}\right|}{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}\right|} \leq 2.$$

If  $|w_1| \ge |w_2|$  then  $(1-\alpha) |\sigma w_1^2| \le |\sigma w_1^2| - \alpha |\sigma w_1 w_2|$ , and inequality (3.27) shows that

$$(3.29) \qquad \frac{\left|\sigma w_{1}^{2}\right|}{\left|\widetilde{\delta}_{11}\right|} \leq \frac{2}{1-\alpha}.$$

However, if  $|w_2| > |w_1|$  then  $(1-\alpha)|\sigma w_1^2| \le (1-\alpha)|\sigma w_2^2| \le |\sigma w_2^2| - \alpha|\sigma w_1 w_2|$ ,

and inequality (3.28) gives inequality (3.29).

Theorem (3.1) shows that the growth of  $\sigma$  can be sensitive to near singularity in  $\widetilde{A}$ . This can result in two ways. If  $\sigma$  is much larger than the eigenvalues of  $\widetilde{A}$  then numerically  $\widetilde{A}$  appears to be a rank one matrix. Also, one of the updated eigenvalues can be shifted to zero. This is reflected in the bounds obtained in Theorem (3.1) since one of the bounds depends on  $\frac{\sigma}{\mu}$  where  $\mu$  is an eigenvalue of D, and the other bound depends upon  $1/(1+\sigma z^t A^{-1}z)$ . The quantity  $1+\sigma z^t A^{-1}z=0$  if and only if  $\widetilde{A}$  has a zero eigenvalue. We conclude that the use of the algorithm should be restricted to cases where the matrices involved are well conditioned. Finally, we do not expect this technique to generalize to the LU decomposition of non-symmetric matrices since our results are heavily dependent upon properties of symmetric matrices.

#### Chapter IV

# The Use of Directions of Negative Curvature in a Modified Newton Iteration

#### 1. Introduction

In this chapter we present an algorithm for obtaining a numerical approximation to the solution of the following problem:

(1.1) Let 
$$f: \mathcal{D} \subset \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$$
; find  $x^* \in \mathcal{D}$  such that 
$$f(x^*) \leq f(x)$$

for all x in some neighborhood of x\*.

For theoretical reasons we shall assume once and for all that f has two continuous derivatives on  $\mathcal D$  and that for any  $\mathbf x_0 \in \mathcal D$ , the level set  $L(\mathbf x_0) = \{\mathbf x\colon \mathbf f(\mathbf x) \leq \mathbf f(\mathbf x_0)\}$  is a compact subset of  $\mathcal D$ . Additional assumptions will be introduced as they are needed. The assumptions just stated shall be referred to as assumptions (1.2).

Recall from Chapter I that we denote the gradient of f(x) by g(x), and the Hessian by G(x). Given a sequence of vectors  $\{x_k\} \subset \mathcal{D}$  we shall use the notation  $f_k = f(x_k)$ ,  $g_k = g(x_k)$ , and  $G_k = G(x_k)$ . We shall sometimes omit the argument x and write f for f(x), and g for g(x), etc., when there is no danger of confusion. Throughout this chapter we use  $\|\cdot\|$  to denote the Euclidian norm, and  $x^ty$  to denote inner products.

The algorithm we shall present may be classified as a <u>descent</u> <u>method</u>. Usually a descent method determines a descent direction  $s_k$  at the iterate  $x_k$  (i.e.  $g_k^t s_k < 0$ ). Then a linear search is performed to obtain  $\alpha_k > 0$  such that  $f(x_k + \alpha_k s_k) \le f_k$  and we take  $x_{k+1} = x_k + \alpha_k s_k$ .

Under some additional restrictions on the choice of  $\alpha_k$  one can show that  $\lim_{k\to\infty} g_k^t s_k/\|s_k\| = 0.$  The vector  $s_k$  is usually related to  $g_k$  in such a way that this limit equalling zero implies that the iterates converge to a point  $x^*$  where  $g(x^*) = 0$ .

In addition to obtaining such a point  $x^*$  we would like to be able to assert that  $G(x^*)$  is positive definite for this would imply that  $f(x^*) < f(x)$  for all x in some neighborhood of  $x^*$ . Of course, we shall not be able to accomplish this goal, but through the use of directions of negative curvature we shall be able to guarantee that  $G(x^*)$  is positive semidefinite. For practical purposes this is very strong assertion. For instance, if the Hessian were known to be nonsingular at all critical points then the point  $x^*$  would have to be a local minimum.

Recently the idea of using directions of negative curvature has appeared in modified Newton algorithms [8,11,16]. In particular we are indebted to the paper of McCormick [16]. Indeed, Theorem (3.1) is only a slight modification of McCormick's result. However, this result led us to consider a new line search strategy. The implementation of this strategy which we present here is based in a fundamental way on the factorization of symmetric matrices using the algorithm of Bunch and Parlett [5] and this is discussed in section 4. In section 5 we give termination criteria for the new univariate search strategy, and show how this relates to previous strategies. Finally, in section 6 we give a convergence result that includes various choices of descent directions and we suggest a particular way to define a modified Newton iteration.

Since the algorithm is a descent method we shall begin with a discussion of descent directions.

#### 2. Descent Directions

The following definitions will be useful throughout this chapter.

<u>Definition (2.1)</u>. Let  $f: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$  be twice differentiable in the open set  $\mathcal{D}$ .

- (a) A point x in  $\mathcal{D}$  is an <u>indefinite point</u> if G(x) has at least one negative eigenvalue.
- (b) If x is an indefinite point then d is a <u>direction</u> of <u>negative curvature</u> if  $d^{t}G(x)d < 0$ .
- (c) A pair of vectors (s,d) is a <u>descent pair</u> at the point x if when x is not an indefinite point then  $g^t s < 0$ ,  $g^t d \le 0$ , and  $d^t G d = 0$ , while if x is an indefinite point then  $g^t s \le 0$ ,  $g^t d \le 0$ , and  $d^t G d < 0$ .

An example of a descent pair would be to take s = -g(x). Then if G(x) is positive semidefinite take d = 0, and otherwise take  $d = -sgn(g^t e)e$  where e is the unit eigenvector corresponding to the most negative eigenvalue of G(x). We shall see that there are more attractive choices than this. However, regardless of the specific choice, a descent pair fails to exist at x only if g(x) = 0, and G(x) is positive semidefinite.

The search strategy we shall present departs from the usual strategy discussed in the introduction. Instead of using only one descent direction and searching in a line determined by that direction, we shall consider searching along a curve of the form

(2.1) C: 
$$\{x_{\alpha} = x + \phi_1(\alpha) + \phi_2(\alpha) d : \alpha \geq 0\}$$

with (s,d) a descent pair at x, and with  $\phi_1(0) = \phi_2(0) = 0$ . We hope to produce an  $\overline{\alpha} > 0$  such that

$$(2.2) f(x_{\overline{\alpha}}) \leq f(x) .$$

If we let  $\Phi(\alpha) = f(x_{\alpha})$  we encounter a univariate minimization problem where  $\Phi''$  is continuous as long as  $\phi_1'', \phi_2''$  are continuous. The following lemma gives sufficient conditions under which (2.2) can be satisfied.

<u>Lemma (2.1)</u>. Let  $\Phi: \mathcal{R} \to \mathcal{R}$  be twice continuously differentiable on the open interval I which contains the origin, and assume that  $\mu \in \{0,1\}$ . Then there is an  $\overline{\alpha} > 0$  such that

$$\Phi(\alpha) \leq \Phi(0) + \mu \left[\Phi'(0)\alpha + \Phi''(0)\frac{\alpha^2}{2}\right]$$

for all  $\alpha \in [0,\overline{\alpha}]$  provided that either  $\Phi'(0) < 0$ , or  $\Phi'(0) = 0$  and  $\Phi''(0) < 0$ .

<u>Proof</u>: The mean value theorem implies that for every  $\sigma > 0$  there exists  $\theta \in (0,\alpha)$  such that

$$\Phi(\alpha) = \Phi(0) + \Phi'(0)\alpha + \Phi''(0)\frac{\alpha^2}{2} + \frac{1}{2}[\Phi''(\theta) - \Phi''(0)]\alpha^2.$$

Hence,

$$\Phi(\alpha) = \Phi(0) + \mu \left[\Phi'(0)\alpha + \Phi''(0)\frac{\alpha^2}{2}\right] + r(\alpha),$$

П

where

$$r(\alpha) = (1-\mu) \left[ \Phi'(0)\alpha + \Phi''(0) \frac{\alpha^2}{2} \right] + \frac{1}{2} [\Phi''(\theta) - \Phi''(0)] \alpha^2.$$

Since

$$\frac{\overline{\lim}}{\alpha \to 0^+} \frac{r(\alpha)}{\alpha^2} < 0 ,$$

there exists an  $\alpha > 0$  such that  $r(\alpha) < 0$  for all  $\alpha \in [0, \alpha]$ .

This lemma not only tells us when (2.2) can be satisfied, but also that the function f must decrease by a significant amount along the curve  $\mathbf{x}_{\alpha}$ . It also indicates that a larger decrease is likely when  $\Phi''(0) < 0$ . We, of course, want to use the simplest functions  $\phi_1$  and  $\phi_2$  which will guarantee that the hypothesis of Lemma (2.1) is satisfied. Observe that if  $\Phi(\alpha) = f(\mathbf{x}_{\alpha})$  with  $\mathbf{x}_{\alpha}$  as in (2.1) then

(2.3) 
$$\Phi'(0) = g(x)^{t} (\phi_{1}'(0)s + \phi_{2}'(0)d) ,$$

(2.4) 
$$\Phi''(0) = g(x)^{t} (\phi_{1}''(0)s + \phi_{2}''(0)d)$$

$$+ (\phi_{1}'(0)s + \phi_{2}'(0)d)^{t} G(x) (\phi_{1}'(0)s + \phi_{2}'(0)d) .$$

Suppose that  $g^t s = g^t d = 0$  at an indefinite point (this occurs for instance at a saddle point). Then in order to insure  $\Phi''(0) < 0$  without imposing further conditions on s we must require  $\phi_1'(0) = 0$ , and  $\phi_2'(0) > 0$ . Then (2.3) and (2.4) simplify to

(2.5) 
$$\Phi'(0) = g(x)^{t}(\phi_{2}'(0)d) ,$$

(2.6) 
$$\Phi''(0) = g(x)^{t} (\phi_{1}''(0)s + \phi_{2}''(0)d) + (\phi_{2}'(0)d)^{t} G(x) (\phi_{2}'(0)d).$$

When G(x) is positive definite then d=0 must be satisfied in order for (s,d) to be a descent pair. Thus  $\Phi'(0)=0$  and we must have  $\phi_1''(0)>0$  in order to insure  $\Phi''(0)<0$ . Therefore, if  $\phi_1(\alpha)=\sum\limits_{j=0}^\infty\beta_j\alpha^j$  and  $\phi_2(\alpha)=\sum\limits_{j=0}^\infty\gamma_j\alpha^j$  then we must have  $\beta_0=\beta_1=0$  with  $\beta_2>0$  and  $\gamma_0=0$  with  $\beta_1>0$ . The simplest functions of this type are, of course,

$$\phi_1(\alpha) = \alpha^2, \qquad \phi_2(\alpha) = \alpha.$$

In this case

(2.7) 
$$\Phi'(0) = g(x)^{t} d,$$

(2.8) 
$$\Phi''(0) = 2g(x)^{t}s + d^{t}G(x)d.$$

### 3. A Modification of the Armijo Steplength Procedure

In Section 2 we introduced the notion of a descent pair. The motivation for considering the use of a pair of vectors rather than the simpler strategy of determining a single direction of descent will be discussed now. We shall present here a modification of a theorem of McCormick. In [16] McCormick gives a modification of the Armijo steplength algorithm [2] which includes second derivative information in the form of directions of negative curvature.

The steplength algorithm will be described now. Given  $\gamma,\mu\in(0,1),\ \text{let}\ \big\{x_k\colon\ k=0,1,2,\ldots\big\}\ \text{be a sequence of points derived from}$  the given point  $x_0$  as follows:

Determine a descent pair  $(s_k, d_k)$  at  $x_k$  and let  $i_k$  be the smallest non-negative integer i such that

$$y_{k,i} = x_k + \gamma^{2i} s_k + \gamma^i d_k \in \mathcal{D}$$

and

(3.2) 
$$f(y_{k,i}) \leq f_k + \mu \gamma^{2i} [g_k^t s_k + \frac{1}{2} d_k^t G_k^t d_k].$$

Take  $x_{k+1} = y_{k,i}$ . Lemma (2.1) shows that the iterates are well defined, and if a descent pair does not exist at  $x_k$  then we accept  $x_k$  as a solution to problem (1.1).

Theorem (3.1). Let f satisfy assumptions (1.2) and suppose that  $\|\mathbf{s}_k\|,\|\mathbf{d}_k\| \text{ are bounded independent of } k.$  Then

(3.3) 
$$\lim_{k \to \infty} (-g_k^t s_k) = 0$$

and

(3.4) 
$$\lim_{k\to\infty} (-d_k^t G_k^d d_k) = 0.$$

<u>Proof</u>: The sequence  $\{f_k\}$  is a decreasing sequence which is bounded below due to the continuity of f and the compactness of  $L(x_0)$ . Thus  $\lim_{k\to\infty} (f_k^{-1} + f_{k+1}) = 0$ . There are two cases to consider.

<u>Case 1</u>. Suppose the integers  $\{i_k\}$  are bounded above by some  $m \ge 0$ . Then

$$f_{k} - f_{k-1} \ge -\mu \gamma^{2m} \left[ g_{k}^{t} s_{k} + \frac{1}{2} d_{k}^{t} G_{k}^{d} d_{k} \right]$$
.

Since

$$-g_k^t s_k \ge 0$$
 and  $-d_k^t G_k d_k \ge 0$ 

the conclusion follows.

Case 2. The integers  $\{i_k\}$  are not bounded above. Without loss of generality we assume that  $\lim_{k\to\infty}i_k=+\infty$ . By the definition of  $i_k$ , if  $\sigma_k=\gamma^{(i_k-1)}$ , then

(3.5) 
$$f_{k+1} \geq f_k + \mu \sigma_k^2 \left[ g_k^t s_k + \frac{1}{2} d_k^t G_k d_k \right].$$

However, due to our assumptions on f and  $L(x_0)$ , a Taylor series argument and the fact that  $g_k^t d_k \leq 0$  may be used to show that

(3.6) 
$$f_{k+1} \leq f_k + \sigma_k^2 \left[ g_k^t s_k + \frac{1}{2} d_k^t G_k d_k \right] + r(x_k, s_k, d_k, \sigma_k),$$

with

(3.7) 
$$\lim_{k\to\infty} \frac{r(x_k, s_k, d_k, \sigma_k)}{\sigma_k^2} = 0.$$

Hence, combining (3.5) and (3.6) gives

(3.8) 
$$\frac{-r(x_k, s_k, d_k, \sigma_k)}{\sigma_k^2} \ge -(1-\mu) \left[ g_k^t s_k + \frac{1}{2} d_k^t G_k d_k \right].$$

The conclusion follows from (3.7) and (3.8).

The result presented by McCormick did not specify a choice of  $\mathbf{x}_{k+1}$  when  $\mathbf{x}_k$  was not an indefinite point, but did suggest the Newton direction. In the case that  $\mathbf{x}_k$  was an indefinite point then  $\mathbf{s}_k = (\|\mathbf{g}_k\|/\|\mathbf{p}_k\|)\mathbf{p}_k$  with  $\mathbf{p}_k$  a descent direction such that  $-\mathbf{g}_k^t\mathbf{p}_k \geq c_1\|\mathbf{g}_k\|$ . Also,  $\mathbf{d}_k$  was required to be a unit vector such that  $\mathbf{d}_k^t\mathbf{G}_k\mathbf{d}_k \leq c_2\lambda_{\mathbf{G}_k}$  where  $\lambda_{\mathbf{G}_k}$  is defined as the most negative eigenvalue of  $\mathbf{G}_k$ . In the above statements  $\mathbf{c}_1,\mathbf{c}_2 > 0$ . McCormick was able to conclude that if infinitely many indefinite points  $\{\mathbf{x}_k\}$  were to occur in the sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}_k\}$ , then any point of accumulation  $\overline{\mathbf{x}}$  of the sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}_k\}$  must satisfy  $\mathbf{g}(\overline{\mathbf{x}}) = 0$ , and  $\mathbf{G}(\overline{\mathbf{x}})$  is positive semidefinite with at least one zero eigenvalue. A specific choice of  $\mathbf{s}_k$  and  $\mathbf{d}_k$  was not suggested.

Under the additional hypothesis that the number of critical points in  $\mathcal D$  is finite, and with a judicious choice of  $(s_k,d_k)$  one can show that the iterates defined by (3.1) and (3.2) converge to a point  $x^*$  where  $g(x^*) = 0$ , and  $G(x^*)$  is positive semidefinite. However, Armijo type steplength procedures do not take into account any information about the shape of the function along the curve  $x_\alpha$ . More sophisticated strategies are available for determining the steplength  $\alpha_k$ .

In the rest of this chapter we shall be concerned with the choice of  $(s_k, d_k)$ , and with a steplength procedure which specifies criteria for terminating a univariate search along curves  $\mathbf{x}_{\alpha}$  of the form (2.1). Finally, a convergence result will be given that indicates these choices are quite reasonable.

## 4. Determining Directions of Negative Curvature

As we shall see, the results of Theorem (3.1) are useful only if

(4.1) 
$$(g_k^t s_k \to 0) => (g_k \to 0)$$
,

and

(4.2) 
$$(d_k^t G_k d_k \to 0) => (\lambda_{G_k} \to 0) ,$$

where  $\lambda_{G_k}$  is defined to be the most negative eigenvalue of  $G_k$  when  $x_k$  is an indefinite point and zero otherwise. Intuitively, if (4.1) and (4.2) hold then the iterates  $\{x_k\}$  are converging to a critical point where the Hessian is positive semidefinite. These statements will be made precise in sections 5 and 6. Here we present various ways in which (4.2) can be accomplished. Matrix factorizations will play an important role. The factorizations we shall discuss in some detail are Gill and Murray's modified Cholesky factorization [11], and the method of Bunch and Parlett [5].

Gill and Murray present an algorithm which for any symmetric matrix A produces a unit lower triangular matrix L, a diagonal matrix D with positive diagonal elements, and a diagonal matrix E with nonnegative diagonal elements such that

$$A+E = LDL^{t}$$
.

The elements of  $LD^{\frac{1}{2}}$  and E are bounded relative to the maximum element of A. This factorization depends upon nonnegative parameters  $(\delta,\beta)$ . The parameter  $\beta$  is used to force a bound upon the elements of  $LD^{\frac{1}{2}}$ . The parameter  $\delta$  in a sense determines the level of positive definiteness that the matrix A+E is required to have. Given the parameter  $\delta \geq 0$ , this factorization proceeds much the same as the Cholesky factorization

with the exception that when a diagonal element is found to be less than or equal to  $\delta$ , it is modified. This modification is expressed in the diagonal matrix E.

It is possible to obtain a direction of negative curvature from this factorization when  $\delta=0$ . Assuming A has a negative eigenvalue, one computes an index  $\ell$  such that  $D_{\ell\ell} - E_{\ell\ell} \leq D_{jj} - E_{jj}$  for  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . Then the solution d to the equation

$$L^{t}d = e_{\ell}$$
,

where  $e_{\ell}$  is the unit vector whose  $\ell$ -th component is 1, can be shown to be a direction of negative curvature.

With this factorization A can have a negative eigenvalue only if E is nonzero. However, when  $\delta > 0$  it is possible for E to be nonzero even though A is positive definite. Thus the direction d obtained above cannot be guaranteed to be a direction of negative curvature unless  $\delta = 0$ . Unfortunately, when this factorization is used in a modified Newton's method  $\delta > 0$  must be specified to obtain a proof of convergence.

The factorization of Bunch and Parlett allows an alternative that avoids this difficulty. We have already discussed this factorization in chapters I and II, but we wish to emphasize here the properties of this factorization relevant to this discussion.

Given any symmetric matrix A the factorization will obtain a permutation matrix Q, a block diagonal matrix D, and a unit lower triangular matrix M such that

$$QAQ^t = MDM^t$$
.

The matrices M and D satisfy

- (4.3) The elements of M are bounded by a fixed positive constant which is independent of the matrix A.
- (4.4) D is a block diagonal matrix with one-by-one or two-by-two diagonal blocks.
- (4.5) D has the same number of positive, negative, and zero eigenvalues as A (Sylvester's Inertia Theorem).
- (4.6) The number of 2×2 diagonal blocks plus the number of negative diagonal elements which occur as 1×1 diagonal blocks of D is equal to the number of negative eigenvalues of A. In the case that A is positive semidefinite, D is a diagonal matrix with nonnegative diagonal elements.

The following lemma will show how this factorization can be used to obtain directions of negative curvature which satisfy (4.2).

<u>Lemma (4.1)</u>. Let  $A = WBW^t$  where  $W \in \mathcal{R}^{n \times n}$  is nonsingular, and  $B \in \mathcal{R}^{n \times n}$  is symmetric. Assume that A has at least one negative eigenvalue. Let  $\{z_j \colon j=1,2,\ldots,m\}$  be unit eigenvectors for B corresponding to eigenvalues

$$\lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \ldots \leq \lambda_m < 0$$
.

Let  $z = \sum_{j=1}^{k} z_j$  where  $1 \le k \le m$  and let

$$(4.7) Wty = z.$$

Then

$$\lambda_{A} \geq k^{2} [K_{2}(W)]^{2} \frac{y^{t}Ay}{y^{t}y}$$

where  $\lambda_A$  is the smallest eigenvalue of A, and  $K_2(W) = \|W\| \|W^{-1}\|$  is the Euclidean condition number of W.

<u>Proof:</u> If x is a unit eigenvector for A corresponding to  $\lambda_A$  then  $x^tAx = \lambda_A$  and if  $u = W^tx$  then

$$\lambda_{A} = x^{t}Ax = u^{t}Bu \ge \lambda_{1} \|u\|^{2}$$
.

Moreover, since  $\|\mathbf{u}\| \leq \|\mathbf{W}\|$ , and  $\lambda_1 < 0$ ,

$$\lambda_{A} \geq \lambda_{1} \|\mathbf{W}\|^{2}.$$

Now note that from (4.7)

$$y^{t}Ay = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ \sum_{j=1}^{k} z_{j} \end{pmatrix} B \begin{pmatrix} x \\ \sum_{j=1}^{k} z_{j} \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{j=1}^{k} \lambda_{j} < 0$$
.

Since  $\|y\| = \|W^{-t} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ \sum_{j=1}^{k} z_j \end{pmatrix}\| \le k \|W^{-1}\|$  we have

(4.9) 
$$\frac{y^{t}_{Ay}}{y^{t}_{y}} \leq \frac{\int_{1=1}^{k}^{\lambda} j}{k^{2} ||y^{-1}||^{2}} \leq \frac{\lambda_{1}}{k^{2} ||y^{-1}||^{2}}.$$

Together, inequalities (4.8) and (4.9) give the desired result.

If Lemma (4.1) is to be useful, then  $W^ty = z$  must be easy to solve. Also, the eigensystem of B must be readily available, and the factorization  $A = WBW^t$  should be relatively cheap to compute. These requirements rule out a full eigensystem decomposition of A and also the factorization of Aasen [1] which gives B in tridiagonal form. However, the Bunch-Parlett factorization certainly satisfies all these requirements with the additional feature that  $K_2(W)$  has a bound that is independent of A.

Fletcher and Freeman [8] have suggested the use of this factorization to obtain a direction of negative curvature. The direction they

suggest corresponds to taking k = m in Lemma (4.1). However, Lemma (4.1) suggests that the best direction to use is with k = 1 since this reduces the magnitude of the constant  $k^2[K_2(W)]^2$  and is slightly cheaper to compute.

# 5. A Steplength Algorithm

Once a descent pair (s,d) has been determined at a point x then we are faced with the problem of determining  $\bar{\alpha}$  such that

$$f(x_{\overline{\alpha}}) \leq f(x)$$

where  $x_{\alpha} = x + \alpha^2 s + \alpha d$ ,  $0 < \alpha$ . One solution would be to determine  $\bar{\alpha}$  such that

(5.1) 
$$f(x_{\overline{\alpha}}) = \min_{\alpha > 0} f(x_{\alpha}),$$

but this is a very difficult computational problem. It is computationally more desirable to replace the problem of satisfying (5.1) exactly with the specification of criteria for terminating a univariate minimization procedure that is designed to solve (5.1).

Such an approach is motivated by the success of previous algorithms which have been used when a single descent direction is specified. Given a descent direction s at a point x, one such algorithm is to terminate the line search when an  $\overline{\alpha}$  has been found which satisfies

(5.2) 
$$g(x+\overline{\alpha}s)^{t}s \geq \eta g(x)^{t}s,$$

and

(5.3) 
$$f(x+\overline{\alpha}s) \leq f(x) + \overline{\alpha}\mu g(x)^{t}s,$$

where  $0 \le \mu \le \eta < 1$  are preassigned constants. If a sequence of points  $\{x_k\}$  are determined where  $x_{k+1} = x_k + \alpha_k s_k$  with  $x = x_k$ ,  $s = s_k$ ,  $\overline{\alpha} = \alpha_k$ 

satisfying (5.2) and (5.3) for each k, then

$$(g_{k+1}^{}-g_{k}^{})^{t}s_{k}^{} \ge -(1-\eta)g_{k}^{t}s_{k}^{}$$
,

and hence

(5.4) 
$$\|\mathbf{g}_{k+1} - \mathbf{g}_{k}\| \ge -(1-\eta)\mathbf{g}_{k}^{\mathsf{t}}\mathbf{s}_{k}/\|\mathbf{s}_{k}\|$$
.

It follows from (5.4) that

(5.5) 
$$\alpha_{k} \| s_{k} \| \ge \psi(-(1-n)g_{k}^{t} s_{k} / \| s_{k} \|)$$

where  $\psi$  is the reverse modulus of continuity of g [17, p. 482]. Since  $f_{k+1} \leq f_k$ , and f must be bounded below on the compact set  $L(\mathbf{x}_0)$ , we have that  $\lim_{k \to \infty} (f_k - f_{k+1}) = 0$  and thus (5.3) implies

(5.6) 
$$(\alpha_k \|s_k\|) g_k^{t} s_k / \|s_k\| \to 0$$
.

Since  $\psi(t_k) \to 0$  implies  $t_k \to 0$  it follows from (5.5) and (5.6) that

(5.7) 
$$\lim_{k \to \infty} g_k^t s_k / ||s_k|| = 0.$$

Usually  $g_k$  and  $s_k$  are related so that (5.7) implies  $\|g_k\| \to 0$  which in turn implies  $\|s_k\| \to 0$ . Thus it is concluded that  $\|x_{k+1} - x_k\| \to 0$  and  $\|g_k\| \to 0$  as long as the  $\alpha_k$  are bounded. This is enough to insure that

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} x_k = x*$$

with x\* a critical point of f due to the following lemma given in [17].

<u>Lemma (5.1)</u>. Let  $f: \mathcal{D} \subset \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$  be continuously differentiable on the compact set  $\mathcal{D}_0 \subset \mathcal{D}$ . Let

$$S = \{\hat{\mathbf{x}} : \hat{\mathbf{x}} \in \mathcal{D}_0, \ g(\hat{\mathbf{x}}) = 0\},$$

and assume that S is finite. If  $\{x_k\} \subset \mathcal{D}_0$  is a sequence such that

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \|x_{k+1} - x_k\| = 0, \quad \lim_{k \to \infty} \|g_k\| = 0,$$

then  $\lim_{k\to\infty} x_k = x^*$ , where  $x^* \in S$ .

Proof: See [17, p. 476].

A full discussion of this type of strategy may be found in [17]. Particular algorithms of this type are given in [12,17]. The strategy has a geometrical interpretation which is depicted in figure 2.

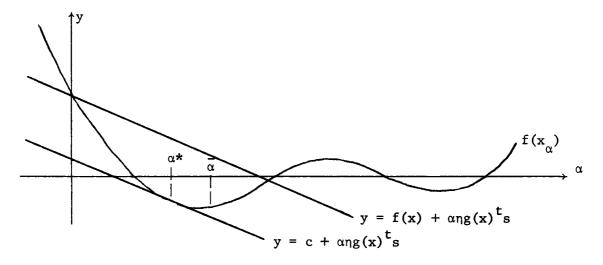


Figure 2
A Search Along x+αs

Here  $\mu$  =  $\eta$  and  $\alpha^*$  is the smallest positive root of the equation  $g(x+\alpha s)^t s = \eta g(x)^t s$ . The local quadratic approximation to  $f(x+\alpha p)$  is

$$\phi(\alpha) = f(x) + \alpha g(x)^{t} s + \frac{1}{2} \alpha^{2} s^{t} G(x) s$$

which is convex near  $\alpha=0$  if G(x) is positive definite as shown in figure 2. Condition (5.3) guarantees sufficient decrease of the function so that  $\|\mathbf{g}_k\| \to 0$  which means that  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}+\alpha\mathbf{p})$  lies below the top line in figure 2. Condition (5.2) guarantees that the distance  $\|\mathbf{x}_{k+1} - \mathbf{x}_k\|$  does not become arbitrarily small. The picture indicates that the only possibility for  $\alpha^* \leq \alpha_k$  to be small is that  $\mathbf{x}$  is close to a local minimum.

The termination criterion we shall give may be viewed as an extension of these ideas which are suitable for the situation when an iterate  $\mathbf{x}_k$  is an indefinite point. We replace (5.2) and (5.3) with the following rule. If (s,d) is a descent pair at x then we terminate the search when  $\bar{\alpha}$  has been found which satisfies

(5.8) 
$$g(x_{\overline{\alpha}})^{t}(2\overline{\alpha}s + d) \geq \eta[g^{t}s + 2\overline{\alpha}(g^{t}s + \frac{1}{2}d^{t}Gd)],$$

and

(5.9) 
$$f(x_{\overline{\alpha}}) \leq f + \mu \overline{\alpha}^2 [g^t s + \frac{1}{2} d^t G d],$$

with  $0 \le \mu \le \eta < 1$  as before. Note that when d=0 these conditions reduce to those of (5.2) and (5.3). Again there is a geometrical interpretation which is depicted in figure 3.

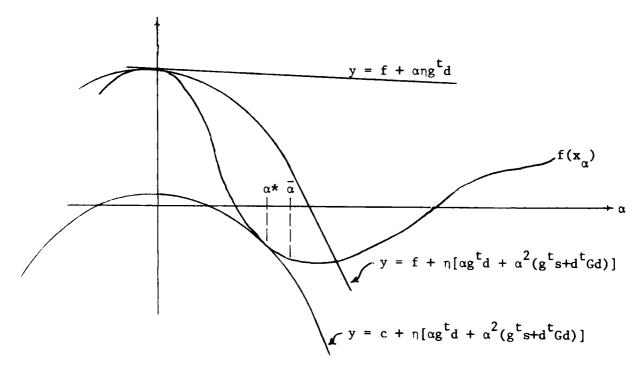


Figure 3 A Search Along  $x+\alpha^2s+\alpha d$ 

Here  $\alpha*$  is the smallest positive root of the equation

$$g(x_{\alpha})^{t}(2\alpha s+d) = \eta[g^{t}d + 2\alpha(g^{t}s + \frac{1}{2}d^{t}Gd)]$$
.

The situation shown in figure 3 describes the shape of  $f(\mathbf{x}_{\alpha})$  along the curve

C: 
$$\{x_{\alpha}: x_{\alpha} = x + \alpha^{2}s + \alpha d\}$$
,

where x is an indefinite point (see figure 4).

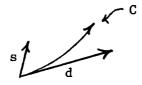


Figure 4
The Curve x+α<sup>2</sup>s+αd

An additional requirement is placed on a steplength algorithm at an indefinite point. Sufficient decrease of the function must be used to force the negative eigenvalues of the Hessian to zero as well as to force the gradient to zero. This is guaranteed by condition (5.9). In addition to this we must not let  $\|\mathbf{x}_{k+1} - \mathbf{x}_k\|$  become arbitrarily small. This is accomplished by condition (5.8). The  $\alpha*$  pictured in figure 3 is similar to its counterpart in figure 2. The picture suggests that the only possibility for  $\alpha*$  to become small is for the iterate  $\mathbf{x}_k$  to be close to a local minimum. The inflection point which must occur along the path C must either be crossed or become "flattened out" in the iterative process.

We note with Fletcher and Freeman [8] that if a direction  $\mathbf{d}_k$  of negative curvature alone is used (taking  $\mathbf{s}_k$  = 0) then the condition

 $|\mathbf{g}_{k+1}^{t}\mathbf{d}_{k}| \leq - \mathrm{n}\mathbf{g}_{k}^{t}\mathbf{d}_{k} \text{ is inappropriate for termination of the linear search because } \mathbf{g}_{k}^{t}\mathbf{d}_{k} \text{ may be close to zero even far away from a minimum. They found it necessary to give termination criteria based on an estimate of the first derivative of <math>\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_{\alpha})$  at the inflection point. The estimate was obtained from the value of the derivative of a related quartic polynomial at its corresponding inflection point.

The following lemma will show that conditions (5.8) and (5.9) can be satisfied whenever a descent pair exists at a point x.

Lemma (5.2). Let  $\Phi: R \to R$  be twice continuously differentiable in an open interval I which contains the origin; and suppose that  $L(0) \subset I$  is compact where  $L(0) = \{\alpha \in I: \Phi(\alpha) \leq \Phi(0)\}$ . Let  $\mu \in [0,1)$  and  $\eta \in [\mu,1)$ . Then if  $\Phi'(0) \leq 0$  and  $\Phi''(0) \leq 0$  there is an  $\bar{\alpha} \in (0,\infty)$   $\cap$  I such that

(5.10) 
$$\Phi'(\bar{\alpha}) > \eta[\Phi'(0) + \Phi''(0)\bar{\alpha}],$$

and

(5.11) 
$$\Phi(\bar{\alpha}) \leq \Phi(0) + \mu[\Phi'(0)\bar{\alpha} + \Phi''(0)\frac{\bar{\alpha}^2}{2}].$$

<u>Proof:</u> The assumption that  $\Phi'(0) \leq 0$  and  $\Phi''(0) < 0$  implies the existence of  $\hat{\beta} \in I$  with  $\Phi(\alpha) < \Phi(0)$  for  $0 < \alpha < \hat{\beta}$ . Let  $\beta = \sup\{\hat{\beta} : \Phi(\alpha) < \Phi(0)\}$  with  $0 < \alpha < \hat{\beta}$ . Then  $\beta > 0$ , and the assumption on L(0) implies  $\beta \in I$  is finite. The continuity of  $\Phi$  implies  $\Phi(0) = \Phi(\beta)$ . Thus

(5.12) 
$$\Phi(\beta) \geq \Phi(0) + \mu[\Phi'(0)\beta + \Phi''(0)\frac{\beta^2}{2}],$$

Define h:  $I \rightarrow R$  by

$$h(\alpha) = \Phi(\alpha) - \Phi(0) - \eta[\Phi'(0)\alpha + \Phi''(0)\frac{\alpha^2}{2}].$$

Since  $\mu \leq \eta$  we have  $h(\beta) \geq 0$ . Note also that h(0) = 0,  $h'(0) \leq 0$ , h''(0) < 0. This together with the continuity of h implies the existence of  $\beta_1 \in (0,\beta]$  such that  $h(\beta_1) = 0$ , and  $h(\alpha) < 0$  for all  $\alpha \in (0,\beta_1)$ . Now

Rolle's Theorem implies the existence of  $\bar{\alpha} \in (0,\beta_1)$  such that  $h'(\bar{\alpha}) = 0$ , and (5.10) follows. Also,  $h(\bar{\alpha}) < 0$  and  $\mu \leq \eta$  imply (5.11).

If we take  $\Phi(\alpha) = f(x_{\alpha})$  then Lemma (5.2) implies that conditions (5.8) and (5.9) can be satisfied. In the next section we will show how these conditions may be used to prove the convergence of a modified Newton method.

## 6. Convergence of the Modified Newton Iteration

Now we turn our attention to defining a modified Newton iteration. We shall give a convergence result based on the use of descent pairs and the steplength algorithm discussed above. The proof proceeds in two parts. The first result is somewhat independent of the definition of the iterates. The second part will use the particular way in which the iterates are defined to establish convergence.

The general iteration from a point  $\mathbf{x}_k$  begins with determining a descent pair  $(\mathbf{s}_k,\mathbf{d}_k)$  at  $\mathbf{x}_k$ . Let

(6.1) 
$$\Phi_{\mathbf{k}}(\alpha) = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{k}} + \alpha^2 \mathbf{s}_{\mathbf{k}} + \alpha \mathbf{d}_{\mathbf{k}}).$$

Assume  $\mu~\epsilon~(0,1)$  and  $\eta~\epsilon~[\mu,1)$  are independent of k. Then  $\alpha_k^{}>0$  is determined such that

$$y_k = x_k + \alpha_k^2 s_k + \alpha_k d_k \in \mathcal{D},$$

(6.3) 
$$f(y_k) \leq f(x_k) + \mu \Phi_k''(0) \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2},$$

(6.4) 
$$\Phi_{k}'(\alpha_{k}) \geq \eta[\Phi_{k}'(0) + \Phi_{k}''(0)\alpha_{k}].$$

Take  $x_{k+1} = y_k$ .

One might note that due to (5.11) in the statement of Lemma (5.2)

we could require  $f(y_k) \leq f(x_k) + \mu \left[ \phi_k'(0) \alpha_k + \phi_k''(0) \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2} \right]$  instead of (6.3). However, the additional term does not enhance the convergence result in any way, while it does give a more stringent requirement to be satisfied by the univariate search. The first step in the convergence result is

Theorem (6.1). Let f satisfy assumptions (1.2). Then the iteration defined above satisfies

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} -g_k^t s_k = 0 ,$$

and

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} -d_k^{\dagger}G_k^{\phantom{\dagger}}d_k = 0.$$

<u>Proof:</u> From (2.7) and (2.8) we have  $\Phi_k^{\dagger}(0) = g_k^{\dagger} d_k$  and  $\Phi_k^{\dagger}(0) = 2g_k^{\dagger} s_k + d_k^{\dagger} G_k d_k$ . Since  $(s_k, d_k)$  is a descent pair,  $\Phi_k^{\dagger}(0) \leq 0$ , and  $\Phi_k^{\dagger}(0) \leq 0$ . Thus (6.3) implies that  $\{x_k\} \subset L(x_0)$ . By the continuity of f and compactness of  $L(x_0)$  we have  $\lim_{k \to \infty} (f_k - f_{k+1}) = 0$ . Now

$$f_{k} - f_{k+1} \ge -\mu \phi_{k}''(0) \frac{\alpha_{k}^{2}}{2} \ge 0$$
, so that

(6.7) 
$$\lim_{k\to\infty} -\alpha_k^2 g_k^{\dagger} s_k = 0 ,$$

and

(6.8) 
$$\lim_{k\to\infty} -\alpha_k^2 d_k^{\dagger} G_k d_k = 0.$$

From condition (6.4) we obtain

$$\Phi_{\mathbf{k}}^{\prime}(\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}) - \Phi_{\mathbf{k}}^{\prime}(0) - \alpha_{\mathbf{k}}\Phi_{\mathbf{k}}^{\prime\prime}(0) \ge -(1-\eta) [\Phi_{\mathbf{k}}^{\prime}(0) + \Phi_{\mathbf{k}}^{\prime\prime}(0)\alpha_{\mathbf{k}}] ,$$

and hence

$$\Phi_{k}^{\prime}(\alpha_{k}) - \Phi_{k}^{\prime}(0) - \alpha_{k}^{\prime}\Phi_{k}^{\prime\prime}(0) \geq -(1-\eta)\Phi_{k}^{\prime\prime}(0)\alpha_{k}$$
,

An application of the mean value theorem now yields that for some  $\theta_k \in (0,\alpha_k)$ ,

(6.9) 
$$\Phi_{k}^{"}(\theta_{k}) - \Phi_{k}^{"}(0) \geq -(1-\eta)\Phi_{k}^{"}(0) .$$

The desired result now follows readily, for if either (6.5) or (6.6) do not hold, then there is a subsequence  $\{k_i\}$  and a  $\sigma > 0$  such that

(6.10) 
$$-\Phi_{k_{i}}^{"}(0) \geq \sigma > 0.$$

Hence (6.9) implies that  $\{\alpha_k^{}\}$  does not converge to zero. However, if  $\{\alpha_k^{}\}$  does not converge to zero and (6.10) holds, then (6.7) and (6.8) cannot be satisfied. This contradiction establishes the theorem.

The  $\{\alpha_k\}$  of (6.2)-(6.4) are to be determined by a univariate minimization algorithm applied to  $\Phi_k(\alpha)$ . Let  $\beta>0$  be fixed, and terminate the search when  $0<\bar{\alpha}\leq\beta$  has been found such that (6.4) is satisfied with  $\bar{\alpha}$  in place of  $\alpha_k$ . If (6.3) is also satisfied we accept  $\alpha_k=\bar{\alpha}$ . If either (6.4) cannot be satisfied (say within a fixed number of steps) or if  $\bar{\alpha}$  does not satisfy (6.3) we take  $\omega$  to be the largest element of the set  $\{2^{-i}\colon i=0,1,2,\ldots\}$  such that (6.3) is satisfied with  $\bar{\alpha}\omega$  in place of  $\alpha_k$  and then accept  $\alpha_k=\bar{\alpha}\omega$ . If infinitely many of the  $\alpha_k$ 's must be determined in this way, then Theorem (3.1) applies so that (6.5) and (6.6) are still obtained. We shall call this process the steplength rule  $SR(\mu,\eta,\beta)$ .

Our next result will show that the iterates defined by this steplength rule converge to a critical point of f where the Hessian is positive semidefinite. It is here that specific properties of the descent pairs  $(s_k,d_k)$  are crucial.

Theorem (6.2). Assume in addition to the hypothesis of Theorem (6.1) that f has finitely many critical points in  $L(\mathbf{x}_0)$ . Suppose that the sequence  $\{\mathbf{x}_k \colon k=0,1,2,\ldots\}$  has been obtained using the steplength rule

 $SR(\mu,\eta,\beta)$  where the descent pairs  $(s_k,d_k)$  satisfy  $\{\|s_k\|,\|d_k\|:\ k=0,1,2,\ldots\}$  is bounded together with

(6.12) 
$$(g_k^{\dagger} s_k + 0) = (g_k + 0 \text{ and } s_k + 0)$$
,

and

(6.13) 
$$(d_k^t G_k d_k \to 0) => (\lambda_{G_k} \to 0 \text{ and } d_k \to 0)$$
,

as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ . Then

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} x_k = x*$$

with  $g(x^*) = 0$  and  $G(x^*)$  positive semidefinite. Moreover, if infinitely many of the  $x_k$  are indefinite points, then  $G(x^*)$  must have at least one zero eigenvalue.

<u>Proof</u>: From Theorem (6.1) we see that  $\lim_{k \to \infty} g_k^t s_k = 0$  and  $\lim_{k \to \infty} d_k^t G_k d_k = 0$ . By (6.12) we have  $g_k \to 0$  and  $s_k \to 0$ . By (6.13) we have  $\lambda_{G_k} \to 0$  and  $d_k \to 0$ . Now,

$$\|\mathbf{x}_{k+1} - \mathbf{x}_k\| \leq \beta^2 \|\mathbf{s}_k\| + \beta \|\mathbf{d}_k\|,$$

hence

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} \|\mathbf{x}_{k+1} - \mathbf{x}_k\| = 0.$$

Therefore, Lemma (5.1) applies and we obtain

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} x_k = x^*,$$

with  $g(x^*)=0$ . Since  $\lambda_{G_k}\to 0$ , we also have by the continuity of G that  $G(x^*)$  must be positive semidefinite. Moreover, if infinitely many of the  $x_k$  are indefinite points then every neighborhood of  $x^*$  contains an indefinite point. Thus the continuity of G implies that  $G(x^*)$  has at least one zero eigenvalue.

Obviously, the proof of Theorem (6.1) rests on the steplength

rule, while the proof of Theorem (6.2) rests on the particular choice of the descent pairs. Many choices of  $s_k$  are possible which satisfy (6.12). Indeed, if  $A_k$  is any sequence of symmetric positive definite matrices such that  $\|A_k\|$ ,  $\|A_k^{-1}\|$  are bounded independently of k, then choosing  $s_k$  as the solution of

$$A_k s_k = -g_k$$

will satisfy (6.12).

In section 3 we gave several ways to choose the  $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{k}}$  at an indefinite point so that

$$(d_k^t G_k^d d_k \rightarrow 0) \Rightarrow (\lambda_{G_k} \rightarrow 0)$$
.

The additional requirements that  $d_k$  must satisfy are obtained if we replace  $d_k$  with  $\pm \gamma(\lambda_{G_k})d_k$ , where  $\gamma$  is a function such that  $\gamma(t_k) \to 0 => t_k \to 0$ , and where the sign is chosen to make  $g_k^t d_k \le 0$ .

The iterates should also reduce naturally to Newton's iteration as soon as a region is found where the Hessian is positive definite. Indeed, the main motivation for this strategy is to obtain the iterates using second derivative information which is based on the true quadratic model at each  $\mathbf{x}_k$ . Of course, it is expected that in practice very few indefinite points will be encountered during the iterative process. In fact, Theorem (6.2) indicates that the strategy we have presented actively seeks a region where the Hessian matrix is positive semidefinite. If, for example, the Hessian  $G(\mathbf{x})$  is nonsingular whenever  $\mathbf{x}$  is a critical point of f then only finitely many of the iterates can be indefinite points.

Finally, we shall suggest a way to obtain the descent pairs

 $(s_k, d_k)$  which satisfy all of the requirements of Theorem (6.2). In our description we assume  $G_k = M_k D_k M_k^t$  is the Bunch-Parlett factorization of the Hessian. Thus we have omitted explicit representation of the permutations  $Q_k$  which will be present in practice. Given f and  $x_0$  which satisfy the hypothesis of Theorem (6.2), for k=0,1,2,... define

(6.14) s<sub>k</sub> as the solution of

$$(M_k \overline{D}_k M_k^c) s_k = -g_k$$

where  $\overline{D}_k = U_k \overline{\Lambda}_k U_k^t$  is obtained from  $D_k$  by first obtaining the eigensystem  $D_k = U_k \Lambda_k U_k^t$  of  $D_k$  and then replacing the diagonal elements  $\lambda_j^{(k)}$  of  $\Lambda_k$  with

$$\max_{1 \le j \le n} (|\lambda_j^{(k)}|, \epsilon_n \max_{1 \le i \le n} |\lambda_i^{(k)}|, \epsilon) ,$$

where  $\epsilon$  is the relative machine precision. In the decomposition of  $D_k$  we have  $U_k^t U_k = I$ , and  $A_k$  diagonal. Note that only O(n) arithmetic operations are required to obtain  $\overline{D}_k$  from  $D_k$ .

(6.15)  $d_k$  is the solution to

$$M_k^t d_k = \pm |\lambda_{D_k}|^{\frac{1}{2}} z_k$$

where  $\lambda_{D_k}$  is the most negative eigenvalue and  $z_k$  the corresponding unit eigenvector of  $D_k$ . When  $D_k$  does not have a negative eigenvalue we take  $d_k = 0$ .

The compactness of  $L(\mathbf{x}_0)$  and the continuity of G imply that the elements of  $\mathbf{G}_k$  and the components of  $\mathbf{g}_k$  are uniformly bounded. Thus  $(\mathbf{s}_k,\mathbf{d}_k)$  satisfy the requirements of a descent pair as well as (6.12) and (6.13) due to the bound on the condition numbers  $\mathbf{K}_2(\mathbf{M}_k)$ .

The above choice of  $(s_k, d_k)$  is somewhat ad hoc and we make no mathematical statements concerning the desirability of this choice. However, in the next chapter computational results will be reported which show that this specification of  $(s_k, d_k)$  works reasonably well in practice. We wish to emphasize that many other choices are possible.

We have not addressed the problem of providing an initial step  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ to the univariate search. Many strategies for determining the initial step are possible. However, we have not found a strategy with enough theoretical basis to recommend it over something very simple such as taking the initial step to be  $\alpha = 1$  each time. Note, however, that whatever strategy is chosen must eventually take  $\alpha = 1$  in order to retain the local quadratic rate of convergence enjoyed by Newton's method.

#### 7. Conclusions

The algorithm we have just described has the following informal description:

(7.1) Given 
$$x_0 \in \mathcal{D}$$
 for  $k=0,1,2,...$ 

- (1) Determine a descent pair  $(s_k, d_k)$ (2) Determine  $\alpha_k$  by  $SR(\mu, \eta, \beta)$ (3)  $x_{k+1} = x_k + \alpha_k^2 s_k + \alpha_k d_k$ .

Step (1) involves evaluating and factoring the Hessian  $G_k$ . Step (2) involves the use of a univariate search that can satisfy  $SR(\mu,\eta,\beta)$ .

The importance of this iteration is that it represents a natural extension of previous theory to include second derivative information. It avoids saddle points and possesses a strong theoretical convergence

property. Finally, the iteration, even in this preliminary stage of development, performs well in practice.

### Chapter V

# Computational Results

#### 1. Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to present computational support of the theoretical results obtained in chapters II, III, and IV. The updating algorithm was tested for timing and accuracy on a large number of random updating problems. The optimization algorithm was tested on a set of test problems which have been used extensively at Argonne National Laboratory for such purposes [5]. In addition to this, the algorithm was tested on some problems which demonstrate its behavior when many indefinite points are encountered during an iteration.

#### 2. Testing the Updating Algorithm

There are two important criteria for testing an updating algorithm. The first criterion is that the updating algorithm actually should represent a computational savings over the alternative of forming the updated matrix and refactoring. The second criterion is that solutions of linear equations using the updating method should be reasonably close to solutions obtained by forming the updated matrix and refactoring.

Timing the updating algorithm and comparing to the alternative is a straightforward task. In order to address the question of accuracy one must decide what quantities should be measured and compared. For each update it seems reasonable to compare

(2.1) 
$$\|Ax_c - b\| / \|b\|$$

with

(2.2) 
$$\|Ax_{11}-b\|/\|b\|$$

for several right hand sides b. In (2.1) the vector  $\mathbf{x}_{c}$  is the solution obtained by forming and refactoring the updated matrix. In (2.2) the vector  $\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{u}}$  is the solution obtained by using the updating algorithm. The quantity

should also be computed.

The quantities in (2.1) and (2.2) measure the relative error in the residual. This relative residual indicates how close the computed solution is to satisfying the equation Ax = b relative to the size of the right hand side b. The quantity (2.3) measures how much the answer obtained by the updating method has deviated from the answer obtained by computing and refactoring the updated matrix.

The process used to test these criteria can most easily be described by means of an informal algorithm. Given a dimension n, we start with  $A = I_n$  the n×n identity matrix. Then the following iteration is carried out.

- (2.4)A := Ifor k=0,1,2,...,m
  - (1)  $z \in R^n$  is chosen with random components in (-1,1);
  - (2)  $\sigma \in R$  is a random number in (-100,100). (3)  $A = A + \sigma zz^{t}$
  - (3.1)  $\widetilde{Q}_{u}\widetilde{A}\widetilde{Q}_{u}^{t} = \widetilde{M}_{u}\widetilde{D}_{u}\widetilde{M}_{u}^{t}$  by updating;
    - (3.2)  $\widetilde{Q}_{c}\widetilde{A}\widetilde{Q}_{c}^{t} = \widetilde{M}_{c}\widetilde{D}_{c}\widetilde{M}_{c}^{t}$  by forming  $\widetilde{A}$  and factoring;

The steps (3.1) and (3.2) of iteration (2.4) were timed. These timings were averaged over the number m of updates. Thus the time required by the updating algorithm can be compared to the time required by the alternative of computing  $\tilde{A}$  and refactoring. The solution to  $\tilde{A}x = b$  was computed for five different right hand sides after each update. This was done to increase the chances of obtaining a large residual  $\|Ax_u-b\|/\|b\|$ . The quantities (2.1), (2.2), and (2.3) were averaged over all iterations and right hand sides. The results are shown in tables 2 and 3.

Table 2 shows the above quantities for various values of the dimension n. In Table 2 UAVE is the average value of  $\|Ax_u - b\| / \|b\|$ , CAVE is the average value of  $\|Ax_c - b\| / \|b\|$ , and AVERR is the average value of  $\|x_c - x_u\| / \|x_c\|$ . The quantity CTIME is the average time to compute and refactor  $\widetilde{A}$  and UTIME is the average time to update the factorization.

Table 2
Results for Increasing Order

n	UAVE	CAVE	AVERR	UTIME	CTIME
5	$6 \times 10^{-14}$	4 × 10 <sup>-15</sup>	4 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>	167	424
10	2 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	2 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>	3 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	320	1567
20	$1 \times 10^{-13}$	$3 \times 10^{-14}$	1 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	706	6459
30	$3 \times 10^{-13}$	7 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>	$2 \times 10^{-13}$	1162	16606
40	8 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	2 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	4 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	1819	32468
50	2 × 10 <sup>-12</sup>	$3 \times 10^{-13}$	4 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	2533	55016

The times shown here are in microseconds. The important thing to note is the relationship of UTIME to CTIME as n increases. To see that the numbers are in the correct proportion one should compare  $n^2$  to UTIME and  $\frac{3}{6}$  to CTIME. Observe also that there is roughly only a one digit loss of accuracy using the updating algorithm. For each of the results in Table 2 we have taken m = 100 in (2.4).

Table 3 shows the results of a particular updating sequence computed by the iteration (2.4). In this example n = 10. The updating process was carried out for 1000 updates. The results show every fifth update selected from the beginning, middle, and end of these computations. In Table 3 the quantities are not averaged. UERR is  $\|\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{u}} - \mathbf{b}\| / \|\mathbf{b}\|$ , CERR is  $\|\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{c}} - \mathbf{b}\| / \|\mathbf{b}\|$ , and XERR is  $\|\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{c}} - \mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{u}}\| / \|\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{c}}\|$  for only one right hand side. UTIME and CTIME are the timings for each individual update in this case. For the entire sequence, the average quantities were UAVE =  $2 \times 10^{-13}$ , CAVE =  $3 \times 10^{-15}$ , and AVERR =  $1 \times 10^{-13}$ .

Table 3
Results of a Long Range of Updates

	UERR	CERR	XERR	UTIME	CTIME
	6 × 10 <sup>-15</sup>	4 × 10 <sup>-15</sup>	8 × 10 <sup>-16</sup>	312	1563
beginning	$7 \times 10^{-14}$ $3 \times 10^{-15}$	$3 \times 10^{-14}$ $7 \times 10^{-16}$	$6 \times 10^{-15}$ $3 \times 10^{-15}$	313 521	1875 1979
	$1 \times 10^{-14}$ $1 \times 10^{-14}$	$5 \times 10^{-15}$ $4 \times 10^{-15}$	$2 \times 10^{-15}$ $2 \times 10^{-14}$	417 417	2083 1563
	1 ~ 10	4 ^ 10	2 ~ 10	41/	1303
	5 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>	6 × 10 <sup>-16</sup>	5 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>	312	1667
	$2 \times 10^{-13}$	$1 \times 10^{-15}$	7 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>	313	1562
middle	8 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>	6 × 10 <sup>-16</sup>	4 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>	208	1563
	7 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>	1 × 10 <sup>-15</sup>	5 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>	312	1980
	1 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	4 × 10 <sup>-16</sup>	1 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	312	1667
	7 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	3 × 10 <sup>-15</sup>	2 × 10 <sup>-12</sup>	208	1458
	5 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	3 × 10 <sup>-15</sup>	5 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	312	1667
end	5 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	1 × 10 <sup>-15</sup>	$2 \times 10^{-12}$	209	1458
	$2 \times 10^{-13}$	$1 \times 10^{-15}$	5 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	209	1771
	1 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	1 × 10 <sup>-15</sup>	2 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>	312	1563

These results indicate that the error analysis in Chapter III is somewhat pessimistic. In particular, Table 3 shows that obtaining the factorization by the updating method does not deteriorate much even over a long range of updates. The timings show that the operation count given in Chapter II was indeed a worst case analysis. They indicate that the worst case rarely happens. This is demonstrated in Table 3 since for matrices of order 10 the operation count predicts that the updating algorithm should require as much work as the alternative.

One disadvantage of the updating algorithm is the length of computer code necessary to describe the algorithm. The timing results indicate that it would be a worthwhile project to see if the length of code could be decreased; perhaps at the expense of increasing the operation count slightly.

# 3. Testing the Modified Newton's Method

The unconstrained optimization algorithm described in Chapter IV was tested on some standard minimization problems. The computer implementation is still under development. Therefore, the results presented here are to be regarded as an indication that the method is promising. There are a number of practical considerations that must be settled before this algorithm can be recommended for general use.

One of the practical problems is the choosing of the descent direction s at an indefinite point. We have described one way in Chapter IV, but we feel that others should be tried. Also, it is not clear what the scaling of the descent direction s should be relative to the direction of negative curvature d.

Another problem is choosing the initial step for the linear search procedure at an indefinite point. Enough information is available at an indefinite point to use a cubic polynomial to predict an initial step. To do this, one interpolates f, f', f" at x where the derivatives are taken along the curve  $x+\alpha^2s+\alpha d$ . The resulting cubic polynomial is then required to achieve a decrease  $\Delta$  at its local minimum  $\hat{\alpha}$ . The number  $\Delta$  is the amount of decrease obtained on the last iteration. This process uniquely defines a polynomial p. We then have

$$\hat{\alpha} = (3\Delta - 2f')/f''$$
.

We also require that the initial step  $\alpha_0$  satisfy  $.5 \le \alpha_0 \le 1$ . Thus we take  $\alpha_0 = \hat{\alpha}$  if  $.5 \le \hat{\alpha} \le 1$ . Otherwise we take the closest endpoint to  $\hat{\alpha}$ . Obviously there is little theoretical justification for this choice of  $\alpha_0$ , but it does an adequate job when safeguarded as mentioned.

Finally, there is always the task of choosing parameters. For instance we must specify  $\mu$ ,  $\eta$ , and  $\beta$  for the steplength rule  $SR(\mu,\eta,\beta)$  (see Chapter IV). In addition to this we must specify criteria for accepting an iterate as an approximation to a local minimum. This, of course, requires the specification of other parameters.

In the following examples we have taken  $\mu=10^{-4}$ ,  $\eta=.9$ , and  $\beta=10^6$ . An iterate  $x_k$  is accepted as an approximation to a local minimum when

(i) The Hessian is positive semidefinite,

(ii) 
$$|f_k - f_{k-1}| < (\tau^2 + \varepsilon) (1 + |f_k|),$$

(iii) 
$$\alpha_{k-1} \|s_{k-1}\| < (\tau + \sqrt{\epsilon}) (1 + \|x_k\|)$$
,

(iv) 
$$g_k^t g_k < \epsilon^{2/3} (1+|f_k|)^2$$
.

Here  $\epsilon$  is the relative machine precision. The parameter  $\tau$  is specified by the user but defaults to  $10\sqrt{\epsilon}$  if found to be smaller than  $\epsilon$ . For these examples  $\tau$  is given the default value. These stopping criteria are used in the Gill and Murray algorithm. We have adopted them in order to obtain a good comparison of the two algorithms. These functions were used as test problems:

(3.1) Rosenbrock's Problem;

$$n = 2$$

$$f = (1-x_1)^2 + 100(x_2-x_1^2)^2$$
,

standard start: (-1.2,1.0).

(3.2) Powell's Function of Four Variables;

$$n = 4$$

$$f = (x_1 + 10x_2)^2 + 5(x_3 - x_4)^2 + (x_2 - 2x_3)^4 + 10(x_1 - x_4)^4$$

standard start: (3.0, -1.0, 0.0, 1.0).

(3.3) Brown's Function with Two Global Minima;

$$n = 2$$

$$f = (x_1^2 - x_2 - 1)^2 + ((x_1 - x_2)^2 + (x_2 - 0.5)^2 - 1)^2,$$

standard start: (0.1, 2.0).

(3.4) Powell's Badly Scaled Function of Two Variables;

$$n = 2$$

$$f = (10^4 x_1 x_2 - 1)^2 + (e^{-x_1} + e^{-x_2} - 1.0001)^2,$$

standard start: (0.0, 1.0).

(3.5) Box's Function;

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^{10} (e^{-x_1 \delta i} - e^{-x_2 \delta i} - x_3 (e^{-\delta i} - e^{-10 \delta i}))^2$$

where  $\delta_i = i/10$ ,

standard start: (0.0, 20.0, 20.0).

(3.6) Wood's Function;

$$n = 4$$

$$f = 100(x_2-x_1^2)^2 + (1-x_1)^2 + 90(x_4-x_3^2)^2 + (1-x_3)^2 + 10.1((x_2-x_1)^2 + (x_4-1)^2) + 19.8(x_2-1)(x_4-1),$$

standard start: (-3.0, -1.0, -3.0, -1.0).

(3.7) Penalty Function I;

n = 4,  
f = A 
$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_i - 1)^2 + B \left[ \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i^2 - \frac{1}{4} \right]^2$$
, where A = 10<sup>-5</sup>, B = 1,  
standard start:  $x_i = i$ , (for  $1 \le i \le n$ ).

 $(3.8) \qquad \text{EXP6};$ 

$$n = 6,$$

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^{13} x_3 e^{-x_1 z_i} - x_4 e^{-x_2 z_i} + x_6 e^{-x_5 z_i} - y_i)^2,$$
where  $y_i = e^{-z_i} - 5e^{-10z_i} + 3e^{-4z_i},$ 

$$z_i = (0.1)i, \text{ (for } 1 \le i \le 13),$$

standard start: (1.0, 2.0, 1.0, 1.0, 1.0, 1.0).

(3.9) Brown's Badly Scaled Problem;

$$n = 2$$

$$f = (x_1 - 10^6)^2 + (x_2 - 2 \times 10^{-6})^2 + (x_1 x_2 - 2)^2$$

standard start: (1.0, 1.0).

(3.10) Beal's Function;

n = 2,  
f = 
$$\sum_{i=1}^{3} (c_i - x_1(1 - x_2^i))^2$$
,  
where  $c_1$  = 1.5,  $c_2$  = 2.25,  $c_3$  = 2.625,  
standard start: (1.0, 1.0).

n = 2,  
f = 
$$\left(\frac{x_1-3}{100}\right)^2 - (x_1-x_2) + e^{20(x_1-x_2)}$$
,

standard start: (0.0, -1.0).

n = 3,  
f = 
$$\sum_{i=1}^{7} f_i^2 + 2$$
,  
where  $f_1 = x_1^4$ ,  $f_2 = f_3 = 0.1x_1^2(x_2-1)^2$ ,  $f_4 = (x_2-1)^4$ ,  
 $f_5 = f_6 = 0.1x_1^2(x_3-1)^2$ ,  $f_7 = (x_3-1)^4$ ,

standard start: (2.0, -3.0, 3.0).

$$n = 2$$
,

$$f = (x_1 - 0.1136(x_1 + 3x_2)(1 - x_1))^2 + (x_2 + 7.5(2x_1 - x_2)(1 - x_2))^2,$$

standard start: (0.5, 0.5).

$$n = 2$$
,

$$f = [(x_1-x_2^2)(x_1-\sin(x_2))]^2 + [(\cos(x_2)-x_1)(x_2-\cos(x_1))]^2,$$

standard start: (0, 0).

(3.15) Hyperbola-Circle Function;

$$n = 2$$

$$f = (x_1x_2-1)^2 + (x_1^2+x_2^2-4)^2$$
,

standard start: (0.0, 1.0).

Table 4 shows the results of these tests on problems (3.1) - (3.15) with the starting point  $\mathbf{x}_0$  taken to be the standard start. The results of the Gill and Murray algorithm on the same problems are also given in this table. For each problem the first entry is the result of the algorithm presented in Chapter IV and the second entry is the result of the Gill and Murray algorithm. The quantities represented are:

NITER = the number of Hessian evaluations,

NFEV = the number of function evaluations,

$$g^{t}g = \|g\|^{2},$$

POSDEF = T if the Hessian was found to be positive semidefinite at the solution, and F otherwise,

FLAG = 0 means normal termination.

1 means abnormal termination.

(We note that for either algorithm an abnormal termination may have been indicated even though the approximation was close to the solution.)

Table 4
Results of Tests with Standard Starts

#	NITER	NFEV	g g	POSDEF	NEGCNT	FLAG
	21	28	5 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>	Т	0	0
3.1	23	29	$6 \times 10^{-27}$			0
	29	30	5 × 10 <sup>-26</sup>	T	0	0
3.2	25	25	$5 \times 10^{-21}$			0
	8	10	0.0	T	0	0
3.3	9	10	1 × 10 <sup>-18</sup>			0
	138	239	1 × 10 <sup>-9</sup>	T	2	0
3.4	186	344	$1.2 \times 10^{-13}$			1
2 5	14	18	2 × 10 <sup>-27</sup>	T	2	0
3.5	10	10	4 x 10 <sup>-26</sup>			1
2.6	38	48	$2 \times 10^{-17}$	T	1	0
3.6	39	50	$1 \times 10^{-17}$			1
3.7	34	43	2 x 10 <sup>-23</sup>	T	0	0
3.7	36	44	$1 \times 10^{-30}$	<u> </u>		0
3.8	527	1000	6 x 10 <sup>-0</sup>	F	527	1
J.0 	47	382	4 × 10			0
3.9	8	10	2 × 10 - 43	T	1	0
J. 9	8	10	$1.2 \times 10^{-43}$			0
3.10	9	11	9 × 10 <sup>-20</sup>	Т	2	0
3.10	9	71	$1.2 \times 10^{-21}$			0
3.11	27	28	3 × 10 <sup>-20</sup>	Т	0	0
J.11 	28	29	$1 \times 10^{-20}$			1
3.12	66	67	$1.2 \times 10^{-32}$	T	0	0
J.12	33	33	$1 \times 10^{-24}$			0
3.13	8	16	9 × 10 <sup>-23</sup>	Т	3	0
	4	1354	$4 \times 10^{-3}$			1
3.14	11	12	$1 \times 10^{-23}$	Т	0	0
3.14	14	33	1 × 10 <sup>-29</sup>			0
3.15	6	7	0.0	T	1	0
	7	8	9 × 10 <sup>-30</sup>			0

The algorithm presented in Chapter IV requires the calculation of the Hessian from an analytic expression in order for the underlying theory to be valid. However, one may want to use the algorithm with a finite difference approximation to the Hessian. In Table 5 the results of using such an approximation on problems (3.1) – (3.15) are presented. The headings in this table are as in Table 4. Again we use the standard starts for  $\mathbf{x}_0$ . It should be noted that except for Powell's Badly Scaled Function (3.4), there is little difference between the behavior of the algorithm with finite differences and with analytic derivatives.

Table 5
Results from Using Finite Differences

#	NITER	NFEV	t g g	POSDEF	NEGCNT	FLAG
3.1	21	28	1 × 10 <sup>-18</sup>	Т	0	0
3.2	29	30	7 × 10 <sup>-26</sup>	Т	0	0
3.3	8	10	$3 \times 10^{-28}$	T	0	0
3.4	553	1000	$1 \times 10^3$	F	546	1
3.5	14	18	$3 \times 10^{-25}$	Т	2	0
3.6	38	48	5 × 10 <sup>-17</sup>	T	1	0
3.7	34	43	$3 \times 10^{-21}$	Т	0	0
3.8	561	1000	8 × 10 <sup>-6</sup>	F	561	1
3.9	11	23	2 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>	Т	2	0
3.10	9	11	$3 \times 10^{-19}$	Т	2	0
3.11	34	44	2 × 10 <sup>-16</sup>	Т	16	0
3.12	66	67	$2 \times 10^{-52}$	Т	0	0
3.13	8	16	3 × 10 <sup>-17</sup>	T	3	0
3.14	11	12	$2 \times 10^{-20}$	T	1	0
3.15	6	7	6 × 10 <sup>-30</sup>	Т	1	0

The use of standard starting points on these test examples does not fully reveal the performance of this algorithm. Some of the

standard starts are in regions such that little or no negative curvature is encountered during the iteration. In order to demonstrate how the algorithm performs when many indefinite points are encountered, we include results of the algorithm on problems (3.5), (3.8), (3.9), and (3.13) with random starting points. These results are presented in tables 6, 7, 8 and 9. In each table the results from ten random starting points are given. For each point there are two entries. The first is from the algorithm presented in Chapter IV and the second is the result from Gill and Murray's algorithm on the same problem.

Table 6
Box's Function

#	NITER	NFEV	g g	POSDEF	NEGCNT	FLAG
	25	36	1 × 10 <sup>-25</sup>	T	21	0
1	24	140	4 × 10 <sup>-8</sup>			1
	16	17	$2 \times 10^{-31}$	T	3	0
2	36	97	$1 \times 10^{-24}$			1
	14	15	$3 \times 10^{-31}$	T	3	0
3	27	70	5 × 10 <sup>-27</sup>			1
,	20	26	$1 \times 10^{-20}$	T	2	0
4	20	20	$6 \times 10^{-33}$			0
	26	42	0.0	Т	22	0
5	37	118	5 × 10 <sup>-25</sup>			1
	22	41	$1 \times 10^{-32}$	T	17	0
6	26	64	$1 \times 10^{-22}$			1
	20	33	$1 \times 10^{-22}$	Т	18	0
7	19	26	$1 \times 10^{-27}$			0
0	18	22	$4 \times 10^{-28}$	Т	3	0
8	9	9	2 × 10 <sup>-21</sup>			0
	16	20	5 × 10 <sup>-25</sup>	T	1	0
9	14	14	$1 \times 10^{-28}$			0
10	12	16	8 × 10 <sup>-32</sup>	T	7	0
10	33	95	2 × 10 <sup>-25</sup>			1

Table 7
EXP6

#	NITER	NFEV	g t	POSDEF	NEGCNT	FLAG
-1	485	730	2 × 10 <sup>-21</sup>	T	41	0
1	2	81	overflow			1
	6	6	6 × 10 <sup>7</sup>	F	6	1
2	135	198	4 × 10 <sup>-6</sup>			1
	25	25	2 × 10 <sup>8</sup>	F	25	1
3	79	147	2 × 10 <sup>-23</sup>			0
,	202	276	5 × 10 <sup>-28</sup>	Т	200	0
4	108	353	2 × 10			1
	8	71	6 × 10 <sup>2</sup>	F	8	1
5	98	418	3			1
	40	431	4 × 10 <sup>-20</sup>	T	38	0
6	128	253	$4 \times 10^{-6}$			1
	335	543	2 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>	T	59	0
7	129	227	9 × 10 <sup>-4</sup>			1
	98	138	5 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>	Т	32	0
8	88	474	4			1
	865	1000	2 × 10 <sup>-4</sup>	F	865	11
9	112	332	2 × 10 <sup>-1</sup>			1
10	810	1000	5 × 10 <sup>-5</sup>	F	810	1
10	108	358	1 × 10 <sup>-8</sup>			1

Table 8
Gottfried's Function

#	NITER	NFEV	gtg	POSDEF	NEGCNT	FLAG
1	26	29	2 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>	T	3	0
	27	29	2 × 10 <sup>-30</sup>			0
	18	26	$3 \times 10^{-18}$	T	3	0
2	19	22	5 × 10 <sup>-29</sup>			
	12	17	8 × 10 <sup>-29</sup>	T	3	0
3	14	15	$1 \times 10^{-22}$			0
,	21	29	$1 \times 10^{-20}$	T	6	0
4	1	1001	2 × 10 <sup>13</sup>			1
_	19	27	5 × 10 <sup>-20</sup>	T	8	0
5	1	1001	2 × 10 <sup>15</sup>			1
	13	15	$1 \times 10^{-27}$	T	3	0
6	1	1001	9 × 10 <sup>12</sup>			1
_	25	27	$1 \times 10^{-19}$	T	2	0
7	25	26	4 × 10 <sup>-22</sup>			0
	21	25	$8 \times 10^{-21}$	T	4	0
8	1	1001	2 × 10 <sup>15</sup>			1
0	15	16	$1 \times 10^{-27}$	Т	2	0
9	1	1001	4 × 10 <sup>16</sup>			1
10	14	16	$1 \times 10^{-26}$	T	3	0
10	11	1001	3 × 10 <sup>14</sup>			1

Table 9
Brown's Badly Scaled Problem

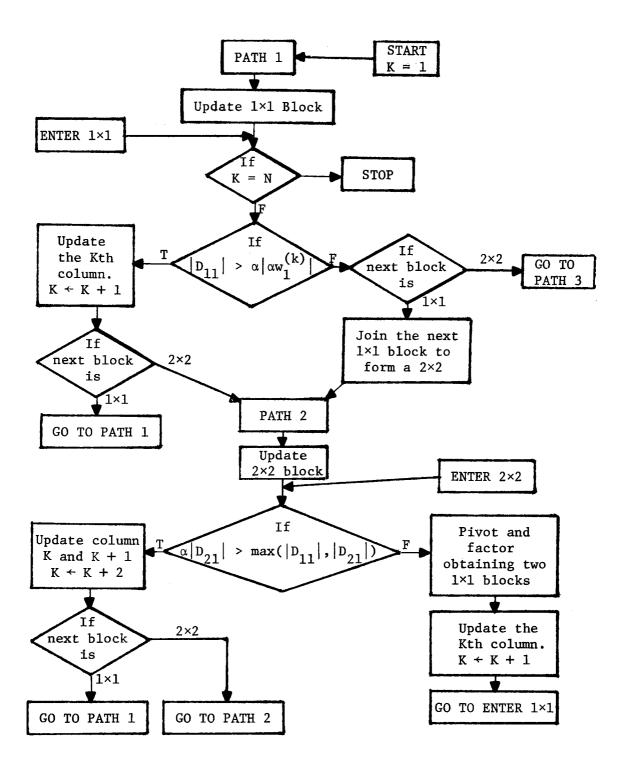
#	NITER	NFEV	g g	POSDEF	NEGCNT	FLAG
1	22	43	$2 \times 10^{-43}$	T	14	0
	24	105	2 × 10 <sup>-43</sup>			0
2	21	43	$2 \times 10^{-43}$	Т	14	0
	21	89	8 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>			1
3	21	40	2 × 10 <sup>-43</sup>	T	13	0
J	21	91	4 × 10 <sup>-12</sup>			1
4	19	45	2 × 10 <sup>-43</sup>	T	8	0
	19	81	4 × 10 <sup>-15</sup>			1
5	21	40	2 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>	Т	14	0
	21	90	4 × 10 <sup>-12</sup>			1
6	19	42	2 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>	Т	12	0
	21	95	2 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>			1
7	21	41	2 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>	T	14	0
	22	99	1 × 10 <sup>-8</sup>			1
8	22	41	$2 \times 10^{-43}$	T	15	0
	21	101	2 × 10 <sup>-43</sup>			0
9	23	44	2 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>	T	16	0
	23	111	1 × 10 <sup>-13</sup>			1
10	19	36	2 × 10 <sup>-19</sup>	T	10	0
10	21	97	4 × 10 <sup>-14</sup>			1

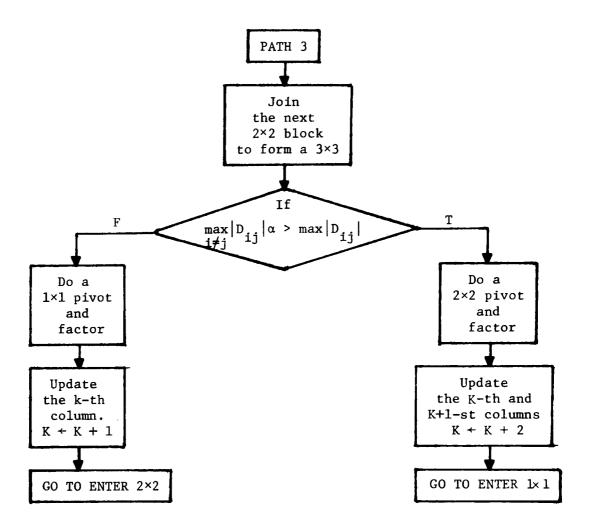
Tests using random starts were made with the other functions as well. However, with the exception of problems (3.5), (3.8), (3.9), (3.10), and (3.13), the results shown in Table 4 were consistent with results using random starts. On Beal's Function (3.10), the two algorithms behaved quite differently depending upon the starting point. The problem exhibited a lot of negative curvature. However, one algorithm would do much better than the other on one starting point, but the opposite situation would occur on another starting point.

We have compared these results with the results obtained by the algorithm of Gill and Murray [11], and have found them to be competitive. This is encouraging since the Gill and Murray algorithm has undergone a thorough development and is one of the best codes available.

The results shown here indicate that the method presented in Chapter IV is promising. Further development is needed in the practical problem areas discussed at the beginning of this section. However, the evidence so far indicates that a fully developed algorithm has the potential of being a reliable and efficient method for unconstrained optimization.

Appendix Al





```
SUBROUTINE SYMUPO(A, NLD, N, SIGMA, Z, CHANGE, Q, W)
                                                                           100.
                                                                           100.1
      DOUBLE PRECISION SIGMA
                                                                           100.2
      INTEGER NAMED
      DOUBLE PRECISION A(NLD.N), Z(N), CHANGE(N), W(N)
                                                                           100.3
                                                                           100.4
      INTEGER Q(N)
100.5
C
                                                                           100.6
     THIS SUBROUTINE COMPUTES THE UPDATED SYMMETRIC FACTORIZATION OF AN N X N SYMMETRIC MATRIX A FOLLOWED BY A PANK ONE UPDATE OF THE FORM A + SIGMA*ZZ* . IT IS ASSUMED THAT
                                                                           100.7
C
                                                                           100.8
C
                                                                           100.9
C
                                                                           101.
C
            DAO! = MCM!
                                                                           101.1
C
                                                                           101.2
C
     WITH D BLOCK DIAGONAL CONSISTING OF 1 X 1 AND 2 X 2 DIAGONAL
                                                                           101.3
C
     BLOCKS, AND M OCCUPYING THE LOWER TRIANGLE OF THE PHYSICAL
                                                                           101.4
C
     ARRAY A. THE BLOCK STRUCTURE OF D IS INDICATED BY THE
                                                                           101.5
C
      ARRAY CHANGE.
                                                                           101.6
C
        CHANGE(K) = 1 IF ENTRY K IS A 1 X 1 BLOCK
                                                                          101.7
                  = 2 IF ENTRY K IS THE START OF A 2 X 2 BLCCK
C
                                                                          101.8
                  = THE DETERMINANT OF THE 2 X 2 BLOCK WHICH
                                                                           101.9
                    STARTS AT ENTLY K-1.
                                                                          102.
C
     THE ARRAYS A.G. PIVUT ARE OVERWRITTEN WITH THE UPCATED
                                                                          102.1
C
      FACTORIZATION
                                                                          102.2
                                                                          102.3
            MDM' = Q(A + SIGMA * ZZ')Q'
                                                                          102.4
                                                                          102.5
     THE UPPER TRIANGLE OF THE PHYSICAL ARRAY A IS NOT ALTERED
C
                                                                          102.6
C
     IN ANY MANNER. THUS A COPY OF THE ORIGINAL MATRIX A MAY BE
      STORED IN THE UPPER TRIANGLE OF A IF A HAS CIMENSIONS
                                                                          102.8
C
C
      N X N+1. THE VECTOR Z IS NOT ALTERED.
                                                                          102.9
                                                                          103.
C
                                                                          103.1
                                                                           103.2
C*********
C
                                                                          103.3
            IS A RECTANGULAR ARRAY WHOSE LEADING DIMENSION IS
                                                                          103.4
             NLD. THIS ARRAY IS ASSUMED TO CONTAIN THE SYMMETRIC
                                                                          103.5
C
             MATRIX A IN FACTORED FORM AS DESCRIBED ABOVE. THE
                                                                          103.6
C
             LOWER TRIANGLE OF A CONTAINS THE MATRIX M. THE BLOCK
                                                                          103.7
C
             DIAGONAL MATRIX D IS STORED IN THE CORRESPONDING
                                                                          103.8
C
             BLOCK DIAGONAL LOCATIONS OF THE ARRAY A. THIS IS
                                                                          103.9
             POSSIBLE SINCE IF D(I,J) (I .NE. J) IS NONZERO
             THEN M(I, J) IS ZERO. THEREFORE, THESE LOCATIONS
                                                                          104.1
C
             AS WELL AS THE DIAGONAL ENTRIFS OF A MAY BE USED TO
                                                                          104.2
C
                                                                          104.3
C
             TO STORE D.
                                                                           104.4
C
             THE LEADING DIMENSION OF THE ARRAY A.
                                                                           104.5
C
     NLD
                                                                           104.6
C
                                                                          104.7
             THE DIMENSION OF THE MATRIX A.
C
C
                                                                           104.9
      SIGMA THE SCALAR DESCRIBED ABOVE.
C
                                                                          105.
C
             THE N DIMENSIONAL VECTOR IN THE UPDATING FORMULA.
                                                                          105.1
C
                                                                          105.2
C
      CHANGE THE N DIMENSIONAL ARPAY WHICH INDICATES THE BLOCK
                                                                          105.3
C
             STRUCTURE OF THE BLOCK DIAGONAL MATRIX D. THE CONTENTS OF THE ARRAY CHANGE ARE DESCRIBED ABOVE.
                                                                          105.4
C
                                                                          105.5
C
                                                                          105.6
C
             AN N DIMENSIONAL INTEGER ARRAY THAT INDICATES THE
C
             PIVOTING NECESSARY TO OBTAIN THE FACTORIZATION.
                                                                           105.8
C
                                                                           105.9
C
                                                                          106.
             AN N DIMENSIONAL LINEAR WORK APRAY.
C
                                                                           106.1
C
                                                                           106.2
106.3
                                                                           106.4
      DOUBLE PRECISION MAXNUM
      DOUBLE PRECISION ALFA, 011, 021, 031, 022, 032, 033, 81, 82, 83, U1, U0,
                                                                           106.6
             T.T1.T2.DET.L1.L2
                                                                           106.7
      INTEGER 01.02.03.1.10.11.K1.K.KM1.KP1.KP2.KP3.J
                                                                           106.8
C
                                                                           106.9
      ALEA=(1.000 + DSORT(17.000))/8.000
```

```
107.
      PO 100 J=1,N
                                                                               107.1
        W(J)=7(0(J))
                                                                               107.2
  100 CONTINUE
                                                                               107.3
      K=1
                                                                               107.4
  101 CONTINUE
                                                                               107.5
C
                                                                               107.€
C
      THE PROCESSING AGGINS HERE
                                                                               107.7
C
                                                                               107.8
      KP1=K+1
                                                                               107.9
      KP2=K+2
                                                                               108.
      IF((K.LT.N).AND.(CHANGE(KP1).LT.0)) GO TO 115
                                                                               108.1
C
                                                                               108.2
C
      THE NEXT BLOCK IS A 1 X 1 BLOCK
                                                                               108.3
C
                                                                               108.4
        T=h(K)
                                                                               108.5
        B1=SIGMA*T
        C11= 4 (K,K)+81 *T
                                                                               108.6
                                                                               108.7
        IF(KP1 .GT. N) GO TG 202
        DO 102 J=KP1,N
                                                                               108.€
                                                                               108.9
          T*(X,L)A-(L)W=(L)W
                                                                               109.
  102
        CONTINUE
                                                                               109.1
  202
        CONTINUE
                                                                               109.2
  103 CONTINUE
                                                                               109.3
C
                                                                               109.4
C
      ENTER 1 X 1
                                                                               109.5
C
           IF(K.LT.N) GO TO 104
                                                                               109.6
                                                                               109.7
            A(K,K)=011
C
                                                                               109.0
            THE DECOMPOSITION IS COMPLETE IF K=N
                                                                               109.9
C
Ç
                                                                               110.
            RETURN
                                                                               110.1
C
                                                                               110.2
  104
        U1=DARS(D11)
                                                                               110.3
        UO=DABS(B1)
                                                                               110.4
        IF((U1.LT.(4LFA*U0)) .AND. (U1*DARS(SIGMA) .LE. ALFA*U0*U0))
                                                                               110.5
     1
                     GO TO 106
                                                                               110.6
           SIGMA=SIGMA-B1*B1/D11
                                                                               110.7
          01 = 81/C11
                                                                               110.8
          A(K,K)=D11
                                                                               110.9
C
                                                                               111.
C
      UPDATE THE K-TH COLUMN OF M.
                                                                               111.1
C
                                                                               111.2
           IF(KP1 .GT. N) GD TO 205
                                                                               111.3
           CO 105 J=KP1,N
                                                                               111.4
            A(J,K)=A(J,K)+B1+W(J)
                                                                               111.5
  105
          CONTINUE
                                                                               111.6
  205
          CONTINUE
                                                                               111.7
        K=KP1
                                                                               111.8
        GO TO 101
                                                                               111.9
C
                                                                               112.
  106
        IF ((CHANGE(KP2).LE.O).AND.(KP2.LE.N)) GO TO 108
                                                                               112.1
C
                                                                               112.2
      A 2 X 2 BLOCK IS FORMED BY COMBINING THE NEXT 1 X 1 BLOCK
C
                                                                               112.3
C
      WITH BLOCK K.
                                                                               112.4
C
                                                                               112.5
          B2=W(KP1)
                                                                               112.6
                                                                               112.7
           T=B2
           C21=82*81
                                                                               112.8
           B2=SIGMA+B2
                                                                               112.9
           D22=A(KP1,KP1)+B2*T
                                                                               113.
           L1=A(KP1,K)
                                                                               113.1
           D22=D22+L1*D21
                                                                               113.2
           B2=B2+L1*B1
                                                                               113.3
                                                                               113.4
           021=021+11*011
           D22=D22+L1*D21
                                                                               113.5
r
                                                                               113.6
C
      INCLUDE INFORMATION FROM THE (K+1)-ST COLUMN OF M.
                                                                               113.7
C
                                                                               113.8
           IF (KP2 .GT. N) GO TO 207
                                                                               113.9
```

```
DO 107 J=KP2+N
                                                                               114.
             W(J) = W(J) - A(J, KP1) *T
                                                                                114.1
             A(J,K)=A(J,K)-A(J,KP1)*l1
                                                                               114.2
  107
           CONTINUE
                                                                               114.3
  207
           CONTINUE
                                                                               114.4
           60 TO 117
                                                                               114.5
  108
      CONTINUE
                                                                               114.6
C
                                                                               114.7
      IF THIS PORTION OF THE CODE IS REACHED WE ARE IN THE CASE OF A
C
                                                                               114.8
C
      1 X 1 SINGULAR BLOCK FOLLOWED BY A 2 X 2 BLOCK. THIS 2 X 2
                                                                               114.9
C
      BLOCK IS JOINED TO THE 1 X 1 BLOCK TO FORM A 3 X 3 MATRIX D.
                                                                               115.
C
                                                                               115.1
           T1=W(KP1)
                                                                               115.2
           T2=W(KP2)
                                                                               115.3
           B2=SIGMA *T1
                                                                               115.4
           B3=SIGMA +T2
                                                                               115.5
           D22=A(KP1,KP1)+62+T1
                                                                               115.6
           D32=/(KP2,KP1)+63*T1
                                                                               115.7
          D33=A(KP2,KP2)+83*T2
                                                                               115.8
           D21=T1*81
                                                                               115.9
           D31=T2*91
                                                                               116.
           L1=A(KP1,K)
                                                                               116.1
           L2=A(KP2,K)
                                                                               116.2
           T=L2*011
                                                                               116.3
          D33=D33+L2*(2.000*D31+T)
                                                                               116.4
           D31=D31+T
                                                                               116.5
           D32=D32+L1*D31+L2*D21
                                                                              116.6
           T=L1*011
                                                                              116.7
           D22=D22+L1*(2.0D0*D21+T)
                                                                               116.8
           C21=D21+T
                                                                               116.9
                                                                              117.
           82=B2+L1 *81
           B3=B3+L2+B1
                                                                               117.1
           KP3=K+3
                                                                               117.2
C
                                                                              117.3
C
      INCLUDE INFORMATION FROM THE (K+1)-ST AND (K+2)-ND COLUMNS
                                                                              117.4
C
      OF M.
                                                                              117.5
C
                                                                              117.6
           IF (KP3.GT.N) GO TO 209
                                                                              117.7
           DO 109 J=KP3,N
                                                                              117.8
            W(J)=W(J)-(\Lambda(J,KP1)+T1+\Lambda(J,KP2)+T2)
                                                                              117.9
             A(J,K)=A(J,K)-(A(J,KP1)*L1+A(J,KP2)*L2)
                                                                              118.
          CONTINUE
  109
                                                                              118.1
  209
          CONTINUE
                                                                              118.2
          U1=MAXNUM(D11,D22,D33,I1)
                                                                              118.3
          U0=MAXNUM(D21,D31,D32,IO)
                                                                              118.4
           IF (U1.LT.(ALFA*U0)) GO TO 112
                                                                              118.5
                                                                              118.6
C
                                                                               118.7
      A 1 X 1 PIVOT WILL BE USED
C
                                                                               118.8
C
                                                                               118.9
           C1=1
                                                                               119.
           Q2=2
                                                                               119.1
           Q3=3
                                                                               119.2
           CALL PIVIX1(D11,D21,D31,D22,D32,D33,B1,B2,B3,CHANGE,Q1,
                                                                               119.3
                        02.03.I1.K.N)
     1
                                                                               119.4
           K1 = K - 1 + 01
                                                                               119.5
           SIGMA=SIGMA-D11*81*81
                                                                               119.6
C
                                                                               119.7
C
      UPCATE THE K-TH COLUMN OF M
                                                                               119.8
Č
                                                                               119.9
           IF(KP3.GT.N) GO TO 210
                                                                               120.
           DO 110 J=KP3,N
                                                                               120.1
             T=A(J,K)
                                                                               120.2
             A(J,K)=A(J,K1)
                                                                               120.3
             A(J,K1)=T
                                                                               120.4
             A(J,K)=A(J,K)+D21*A(J,KP1)+D31*A(J,KP2)+B1*W(J)
                                                                               120.5
  110
           CONTINUE
                                                                               120.6
           CONTINUE
  210
                                                                               120.7
           KM 1=K-1
```

```
120.8
C
                                                                                 120.9
C
      INTERCHANGE THE CORRESPONDING ROWS OF M.
                                                                                 121.
C
                                                                                 121.1
           IF (KM1 .LT. 1) GO TC 211
                                                                                 121.7
           CO 111 J=1,KM1
                                                                                 121.3
             T=A(K,J)
                                                                                 121.4
             A(K,J)=A(K1,J)
                                                                                 121.5
             A(K1,J)=T
                                                                                 121.6
  111
           CONTINUE
                                                                                 121.7
  211
           CONTINUE
                                                                                 121.8
           I=0(K)
                                                                                 121.9
           Q(K)=Q(K1)
                                                                                 122.
           Q(K1)=I
                                                                                 122.1
C
                                                                                 122.2
           A(K,K)=D11
                                                                                 122.3
           A(KP1,K)=D21
                                                                                 122.4
           A(KP2,K)=D31
                                                                                 122.5
           C11=D22
                                                                                 122.6
           C22=D33
                                                                                 122.7
           C21=D32
                                                                                 122.8
           P1=82
                                                                                 122.9
           B2=B3
                                                                                 123.
           K=KP1
           KP1=KP2
                                                                                 123.1
                                                                                123.2
           KP2=KP2+1
           GO TO 117
                                                                                123.3
        CONTINUE
                                                                                 123.4
  112
C
                                                                                 123.5
C
      A 2 X 2 PIVOT WILL BE USED
                                                                                123.6
C
                                                                                123.7
           Q1 = 1
                                                                                 123.8
           02 = 2
                                                                                123.9
           03 = 3
                                                                                124.
           CALL PIV2X2(D11,D21,D31,D22,D32,D33,B1,B2,B3,CHANGE,SIGMA,C1,
                                                                                124.1
     1
                        Q2,Q3,I0,K,N)
                                                                                 124.2
           K1 = K - 1 + Q1
                                                                                 124.3
           K2=K-1+Q2
                                                                                124.4
           I=0(K)
                                                                                124.5
           Q(K)=O(K1)
                                                                                124.6
           C(K1)=I
                                                                                124.7
           I=0(KP1)
                                                                                124.8
           Q(KP1)=Q(K2)
                                                                                124.9
           Q(K2)=I
                                                                                125.
C
                                                                                125.1
C
      UPDATE THE K-TH AND (K+1)-ST COLUMNS OF M.
                                                                                125.2
C
                                                                                125.3
           IF (KP3.GT.N) GO TU 213
                                                                                125.4
           00 113 J=KP3,N
                                                                                125.5
             T=A(J,K)
                                                                                125.6
             A(J,K)=A(J,K1)
                                                                                125.7
             A(J,K1)=T
                                                                                125.8
             T=A(J, KP1)
                                                                                125.9
             A(J,KP1)=A(J,K2)
                                                                                126.
             A(J,K2)=T
                                                                                126.1
             A(J,K)=A(J,K)+D31#A(J,KP2)+B1*W(J)
                                                                                126.2
             A(J, KP1)=A(J, KP1)+D32*A(J, KP2)+32*W(J)
                                                                                126.3
  113
          CONTINUE
                                                                                126.4
  213
          CONTINUE
                                                                                126.5
C
                                                                                126.6
C
      INTERCHANGE THE CORRESPONDING ROWS OF M.
                                                                                126.7
Č
                                                                                126.8
           KM1=K-1
                                                                                126.9
          DO 114 J=1.KM1
                                                                                127.
             T=A(K,J)
                                                                                127.1
             A(K,J)=A(K1,J)
                                                                                127.2
             A(K1,J)=T
                                                                                127.3
             T=A(KP1.J)
                                                                                127.4
             A(KP1,J)=A(K2,J)
                                                                                127.5
             A(K2,J)=T
                                                                                127.6
  114
          CONTINUE
                                                                               .127.7
```

```
127.8
           A(K,K)=D11
           A(KP1,K)=021
                                                                              127.9
           A(KP1,KP1)=D22
                                                                              128.
           A(KP2,K)=D31
                                                                              128.1
           A(KP2,KP1)=032
                                                                              128.2
           D11=D33
                                                                              128.3
          B1=B3
                                                                              128.4
          K=KP2
                                                                              128.5
          KP1=K+1
                                                                              128.6
          KP2=K+2
                                                                              128.7
          GO TO 103
                                                                              128.8
  115
        CONTINUE
                                                                              128.9
C
                                                                              129.
C
      THE DIAGONAL BLOCK BEGINNING AT ENTRY K IS 2 X 2 . THE UPDATED
                                                                              129.1
C
      DIAGONAL BLOCK D IS REQUIRED TO SATISFY
                                                                              129.2
C
                                                                              129.3
C
            ABS(D21)*ALFA .GT. MAX(ABS(D11) . ABS(D22)).
                                                                              129.4
C
                                                                              129.5
C
      IF THIS IS NOT SATISFIED THE BLOCK IS SPLIT INTO TWO 1 X 1 BLOCKS. 129.6
C
                                                                              129.7
C
                                                                              129.8
          T1=W(K)
                                                                              129.9
          T2=W(KP1)
                                                                              130.
          Bl=SIGMA *W(K)
                                                                              130.1
          B2=SIGMA*W(KP1)
                                                                              130.2
          D11=4(K,K)+B1+W(K)
                                                                              130.3
          D21=A(KP1,K)+B2#W(K)
                                                                              130.4
          D22=A(KP1,KP1)+B2+W(KP1)
                                                                              130.5
          IF (KP1.GE.N) GO TO 117
                                                                              130.6
                                                                              130.7
          CO 116 J=KP2,N
            W(J)=k(J)-(A(J,K)*T1 + A(J,KP1)*T2)
                                                                             130.8
  116
         CONTINUE
                                                                              130.9
                                                                              131.
C
                                                                              131.1
  117 CONTINUE
                                                                              131.2
C
                                                                              131.3
C
      ENTER 2 X 2
                                                                              131.4
      THE 2 X 2 BLOCK WILL BE PROCESSED
C
                                                                              131.5
C
                                                                              131.6
           T1 = 0.000
                                                                              131.7
           U1=MAXNUM(D11,D22,T1,I1)
                                                                              131.8
           IF (U1.GE.(ALFA*DABS(D21))) GO TO 119
                                                                              131.9
C
                                                                              132.
C
      A 2 X 2 PIVOT WILL BE USED
                                                                              132.1
C
                                                                              132.2
           CET=D11*022-D21*D21
                                                                              132.3
           CHANGE(K)=2
                                                                              132.4
           CHANGE (KP1) = DET
                                                                              132.5
           A(K.K)=811
                                                                              132.6
           A(KP1,K)=021
                                                                              132.7
           A(KP1,KP1)=022
                                                                              132.8
           IF (KP1.EQ. N) RETURN
                                                                              132.9
           T1=(D22*81-921*82)/DET
                                                                              133.
           T2=(-D21*81+D11*82)/DET
                                                                              133.1
           IF (KP2 .GT. N) GU TO 218
                                                                              133.2
C
                                                                              133.3
      UPDATE THE K-TH AND (K+1)-ST COLUMNS OF M.
C
                                                                              133.4
C
                                                                              133.5
           DO 118 J=KP2.N
                                                                              133.6
             T = W(J)
                                                                              133.7
             A{J,K}=A{J,K}+T1*T
                                                                              133.8
             A(J,KP1)=A(J,KP1)+T2*T
                                                                              133.9
           CONTINUE
  118
                                                                              134.
           CONTINUE
  218
                                                                              134.1
           SIGMA=SIGMA-(T1*B1+T2*B2)
                                                                              134.2
           K=KP2
                                                                              134.3
           GO TO 101
                                                                              134.4
         CONTINUE
  119
```

```
134.5
C
r
       A 1 X 1 PIVOT WILL BE USED
                                                                                 134.6
                                                                                 134.7
C
           IF (11.NE.2) GO TO 122
                                                                                 134.8
                                                                                 134.9
C
                                                                                 135.
C
       INTERCHANGE THE KOWS AND COLUMNS OF M IF NECESSARY.
C
                                                                                 135.1
           T=011 '
                                                                                 135.2
           D11=D22
                                                                                 135.3
                                                                                 135.4
           922=T
           T=81
                                                                                 135.5
           81=82
                                                                                 135.6
           82=T
                                                                                 135.7
           1=Q(K)
                                                                                 135.8
           Q(K)=Q(KP1)
                                                                                 135.9
           Q(KPI)=I
                                                                                 136.
           IF (KP2.GT.N) GO TO 220
                                                                                 136.1
           00 120 J=KP2.N
                                                                                 136.2
             T=A(J,K)
                                                                                 136.3
             A(J,K)=A(J,KP1)
                                                                                 136.4
             \Lambda(J,KP1)=T
                                                                                 136.5
  120
           CONTINUE
                                                                                 136.6
  220
           CONTINUE
                                                                                 136.7
           KM1=K-1
                                                                                 136.8
           IF (KM1 .LT. 1) GO TO 221
                                                                                 136.9
           00 121 J=1,KM1
                                                                                 137.
             T=A(K,J)
                                                                                 137.1
             A(K,J)=A(KP1,J)
                                                                                137.2
             A(KP1,J)=T
                                                                                 137.3
  121
           CONTINUE
                                                                                137.4
           CONTINUE
  221
                                                                                137.5
C
                                                                                137.6
  122
         CONTINUE
                                                                                137.7
C
                                                                                137.8
C
      PROCESS THE TWO 1 X 1 BLOCKS
                                                                                137.9
C
                                                                                138.
           CHANGE (K)=1
                                                                                138.1
           CHANGE (KP1)=1
                                                                                138.2
           022=022-(021+021)/011
                                                                                138.3
           C21=021/011
                                                                                138.4
           82=82-81 *D21
                                                                                138.5
           81=B1/D11
                                                                                138.6
           IF (KP2.GT.N) GC TO 223
                                                                                138.7
C
                                                                                138.8
C
      UPDATE THE K-TH COLUMN OF M.
                                                                                138.9
                                                                                139.
           00 123 J=KP2.N
                                                                                139.1
             A(J,K)=A(J,K)+D21*A(J,KP1)+B1*W(J)
                                                                                139.2
  123
           CONTINUE
                                                                                139.3
  223
           CONTINUE
                                                                                139.4
           A(K,K)=D11
                                                                                139.5
           A(KP1,K)=D21
                                                                                139.6
           SIGMA=SIGMA-B1*D11*B1
                                                                                139.7
          C11=D22
                                                                                139.8
          81=82
                                                                                139.9
          K=KP1
                                                                                140.
          KP1=KP2
                                                                                140.1
          KP2=K+2
                                                                                140.2
          GO TO 103
                                                                                140.3
      END
                                                                                140.4
```

```
140.5
      SUBROUTINE PIVIXI(011,021,031,022,032,033,81,82,83,CHANGE.
                                                                       140.6
                       01.62.03.11.K.N)
                                                                       140.7
     l
     DOUBLE PRECISION D11, L21, 931, C22, 032, 933, 81, 82, 83
                                                                       140.8
      INTEGER Q1,02,03,11,K,N
                                                                       140.9
      DOUBLE PRECISION CHANCE(N)
                                                                       141.
141.1
C
                                                                       141.2
C
                                                                       141.3
     THIS SUBROUTINE PERFORMS A 1 X 1 PIVOT. GIVEN A 3 X 3
C
                                                                       141.4
     SYMMETRIC MATRIX D=(DIJ) WHICH SATISFIES THE 1 X 1 PIVOT
C
                                                                       141.5
     CPITFRIA WITH D(II.II) AS THE PIVOT ELEMENT. THE 3 X 3 MATRIX D
C
                                                                       141.6.
     IS PERMUTED TO BRING C(11,11) TO THE (1,1) POSITION AND
C
                                                                       141.7
C
     THEN THE FIRST STEP OF THE FACTOPIZATION IS DONE IN PLACE.
                                                                       141.6
C
                                                                       141.9
C
                                                                       142.
142.1
C
                                                                       142.2
     DOUBLE PRECISION T
                                                                       142.3
     INTEGER KP1.KP2
                                                                       142.4
     KP1=K+1
                                                                       142.5
     KP2=K+2
                                                                       142.€
     GO TO (10,20,30),11
                                                                       142.7
C
                                                                       142.8
С
     THE MAX ELEMENT IS 522
                                                                       142.9
                                                                       143.
C
  20
       T=011
                                                                       143.1
       C11=D22
                                                                       143.2
                                                                       143.3
       D22=T
                                                                       143.4
C
                                                                       143.5
        T=C32
                                                                       143.6
        C32=031
                                                                       143.7
        C31=T
                                                                       143.8
C
                                                                       143.9
        T=82
                                                                       144.
        B2=B1
                                                                       144.1
        B1=T
                                                                       144.2
        Q1=2
                                                                       144.3
        Q2=1
                                                                       144.4
      GO TO 10
                                                                       144.5
C
                                                                       144.6
      THE MAX ELEMENT IS D33
C
                                                                       144.7
C
                                                                       144.8
   30
        T=011
                                                                       144.9
        C11=033
                                                                       145.
        D33=T
                                                                       145.1
C
                                                                       145.2
        T=021
                                                                       145.3
        D21=D32
                                                                       145.4
        D32=T
                                                                       145.5
C
                                                                       145.6
        T=81
                                                                       145.7
        81 = 83
                                                                       145.8
        B3=T
                                                                       145.9
C
                                                                       146.
        01=3
                                                                       146.1
        Q3=1
                                                                       146.2
C
                                                                       146.3
      THE MAX ELEMENT IS D11
C
                                                                       146.4
C
                                                                       146.5
   10 D22=D22-(D21*D21)/D11
                                                                       146.6
      D32=C32-(D31*D21)/D11
                                                                        146.7
      D33=D33-(D31*D31)/D11
                                                                       146.8
      B1=B1/D11
                                                                       146.9
      82=82-B1*D21
                                                                        147.
      B3=B3-B1*D31
                                                                        147.1
      D21=C21/D11
                                                                        147.2
      031=031/011
                                                                        147.3
      CHANGE(K)=1.
                                                                        147.4
      RETURN
                                                                        147.5
      END
```

```
147.6
      SUBROUTINE PIV2X2(D11,D21,D31,U22,D32,D33,B1,B2,B3,CHANGE,SIGMA+
                                                                       147.7
     1
                       Q1,Q2,Q3,I0,K,N)
      DOUBLE PRECISION 011,021,022,031,032,033,61,82,83,510MA
                                                                       147.8
                                                                       147.5
      INTEGER Q1,02,03,10,K,N
                                                                       148.
      DOUBLE PRECISION CHANGE(N)
148.1
C
                                                                       148.2
C
                                                                       148.3
                                                                       148.4
      THIS SUBROUTINE PEFFORMS A 2 X 2 PIVCT ON THE 3 X 3 MATRIX
C
      D = (DIJ). THE MAXIMUM OFF-DIAGONAL ELEMENT IS BYOUGHT TO THE
                                                                       148.5
      (2.1) POSITION. ITS ORIGINAL LOCATION IS INDICATED BY THE
                                                                       148.6
¢
C
      VARIABLE TO:
                                                                       148.7
C
                                                                       148.8
C
                D21 IS THE MAX ELEMENT
                                                                       148.5
           10=1
                D31 IS THE MAX ELEMENT
                                                                       149.
C
           10=2
C
           10=3 D32 IS THE MAX ELEMENT
                                                                       149.1
C
                                                                       149.2
C
      THE FIRST STEP OF THE FACTOFIZATION OF THE MATRIX (DIJ) IS
                                                                       149.3
C
      CARRIED OUT IN PLACE USING THE 2X2 PIVOT.
                                                                       149.4
C
                                                                       149.5
149.6
C
                                                                       149.7
      INTEGER KP1.KP2
                                                                       149.8
     DOUBLE PRECISION S.T. CET
                                                                       149.9
C
                                                                       150.
      KP I=K+1
                                                                       150.1
      KP2=K+2
                                                                       150.2
      GO TO (10,20,30),10
                                                                       150.3
   20 CONTINUE
                                                                       150.4
C
                                                                       150.5
C
      D31 IS THE MAX ELEMENT
                                                                       150.6
C
                                                                       150.7
        T=022
                                                                       150.8
        C22=D33
                                                                       150.9
        D33=T
                                                                       151.
C
                                                                       151.1
        T=021
                                                                       151.2
        C21=D31
                                                                       151.3
        D31=T
                                                                       151.4
C
                                                                       151.5
        T=82
                                                                       151.6
        B2=B3
                                                                       151.7
        63=T
                                                                      151.8
C
                                                                      151.9
       Q2 = 3
                                                                      152.
       Q3=2
                                                                       152.1
     CO TC 10
                                                                      152.2
   30 CONTINUE
                                                                      152.3
C
                                                                      152.4
C
     D32 IS THE MAX ELEMENT
                                                                      152.5
                                                                      152.6
        T=011
                                                                      152.7
       C11=D22
                                                                      152.8
       D22=033
                                                                      152.9
       D33=T
                                                                      153.
C
                                                                      153.1
       T= P21
                                                                      153.2
       C21=D32
                                                                      153.3
       C32=D31
                                                                      153.4
       D31=T
                                                                      153.5
C
                                                                      153.6
       T=81
                                                                      153.7
       B1=82
                                                                      153.8
       B2=B3
                                                                      153.9
       83=T
                                                                      154.
C
                                                                      154.1
       Q1=2
                                                                      154.2
       C2=3
                                                                      154.3
       03=1
                                                                      154.4
  10 CONTINUE
                                                                      154.5
```

```
154.6
C
C
      021 IS THE MAX FLEMENT
                                                                               154.7
      THE 2 X 2 PIVOT IS DONE HERE
C
                                                                               154.8
C
                                                                               154.9
      DFT=C11*D22-C21*721
                                                                              155.
      T=(022*031-021*032)/DET
                                                                              155.1
      S=(-021*031+011*0321/06T
                                                                              155.2
                                                                              155.3
      83=83-(T*B1+S*82)
                                                                              155.4
      D33=D33-(T#D31+S#D32)
                                                                              155.5
      D31=T
      D32=5
                                                                              155.6
      T=(022*P1-021*82)/DET
                                                                              155.7
                                                                              155.8
      S=(-C21*B1+011*B2)/DET
      SIGMA=SIGMA-(T*B1+S*B2)
                                                                              155.9
                                                                              156.
      B1=T
                                                                              156.1
      R2=S
                                                                              156.2
      CHANGE (K) = 2
                                                                              156.3
      CHANGE (KP1) = DET
                                                                              156.4
      CHANGE(KP2) = 1
      RETURN
                                                                              156.5
                                                                              156.6
      END
```

```
COUBLE PRECISION FUNCTION MAXNUM(A,B,C,I)
                                                               156.7
     DOUPLE PRECISION A.B.C
                                                               156.8
     INTEGER I
                                                               156.9
157.
C
                                                               157.1
C
     THIS FUNCTION FINDS THE MAXIMUM OF THE ABSOLUTE VALUES OF A,B,C
                                                               157.2
C
     AND INDICATES WHICH OF THE VALUES IS SELECTED BY SETTING
                                                               157.3
C
     I = 1.2.3 RESPECTIVELY.
                                                               157.4
C
                                                               157.5
C********************
                                                               157.6
     DOUBLE PRECISION S.T.
                                                               157.7
                                                               157.8
       I = 1
       T=DABS(A)
                                                               157.9
                                                               158.
       S=CABS(B)
       IF (S.LE.T) GO TO 10
                                                               158.1
                                                               156.2
        T=S
                                                               158.3
        I = 2
                                                               158.4
  10
      CONTINUE
       S=CABS(C)
                                                               158.5
                                                               158.6
       IF (S.LE.T) GO TO 20
                                                               158.7
        T=S
                                                               158.8
        I=3
  20
      CONTINUE
                                                               158.9
                                                               159.
      MAXNUM=T
                                                               159.1
     RETURN
                                                               159.2
     END
```

```
159.3
      SUBROUTINE SOLVEIA, NLD, N, CHANGE, Q, X, IFAIL)
                                                                           159.4
      INTEGER N.NLD, IFAIL
                                                                           159.5
      DOUBLE PRECISION ACHLO, N), X(M), CHANGE(M)
                                                                           159.6
      INTEGER Q(N)
                                                                          159.7
159.8
C
                                                                           159.9
      THIS SURROUTINE COMPUTES THE SOLUTION TO AX = B.
C
                                                                           160.
C
      THE MATRIX A IS ASSUMED TO BE IN THE FACTORED FORM
                                                                          160.1
C
                                                                          160.2
C
                                                                          1(0.3
            THOM = TOAD
C
                                                                          160.4
C
      WHERE M IS BLOCK UNIT LOWER TRIANGULAR AND D IS BLOCK
                                                                          160.5
C
      DIAGONAL WITH 1X1 AMD 2X2 DIAGONAL BLUCKS. IT IS
                                                                          160.6
C
                                                                          160.7
C
      ASSUMED THAT 4. D ARE CUTPUT FROM THE POUTINE SYMUPC
      AND THAT THAT THESE ARRAYS ARE STORED IN THE LOWER.
                                                                          160.8
C
      TRIANGLE OF A. ON INPUT THE ARRAY X CONTAINS THE
                                                                          160.9
C
     RIGHT HAND SIDE B AND CN OUTPUT X CONTAINS THE SOLUTION VECTOR. IFAIL = 1 IF THE SYSTEM IS
                                                                          161.
C
C
                                                                          161.1
      SINGULAR (NO SOLUTION IN THIS CASE) CTHERWISE IFAIL
                                                                          161.2
C
      IS RETURNED WITH THE VALUE O (A SOLUTION WAS OBTAINED).
                                                                          161.3
C
C
                                                                          161.4
C
                                                                          161.5
                                                                          161.6
C*********
                                                                          161.7
C
C
                                                                          161.6
C
     Α
             THE ARPAY A IS RECTANGULAR WITH LEADING CIMENSION NLC.
                                                                          161.9
              THE SECOND DIMENSION MUST BE GREATER THAM OR EQUAL TO No.
                                                                          162.
C
              THE ARRAY A IS ASSUMED TO HAVE THE FACTORIZATION OF THE
                                                                          162.1
C
              MATRIX A AS DESCRIBED IN THE SUBROUTINE SYMUPO.
                                                                          162.2
C
                                                                          162.3
C
             THE LEADING DIMENSION OF THE ARRAY A.
                                                                          162.4
C
     NLD
                                                                          162.5
C
C
             THE DIMENSION OF THE MATRIX A.
                                                                          162.0
                                                                          162.7
C
      CHANGE AN N DIMENSIONAL VECTOR WHICH CONTAINS A DESCRIPTION
C
                                                                          162.3
              OF THE BLOCK STRUCTURE OF D. AND THE DETERMINANT
C
                                                                          162.9
              OF EACH 2X2 DIAGONAL OF C. SEE THE DOCUMENTATION FOR THE SUBROUTINE SYMUPD FOR A MORE COMPLETE DESCRIPTION
C
                                                                          163.
                                                                          163.1
C
C
              OF THE CONTENTS OF CHANGE.
                                                                          163.2
C
                                                                          163.3
              AN N DIMENSIONAL INTEGER ARRAY WHICH CONTAINS THE
C
                                                                          163.4
C
              PIVOTING USED TO OBTAIN THE FACTORIZATION OF A.
                                                                          163.5
C
                                                                          163.6
C
              AN N DIMENSIONAL VECTOR. THE CONTENTS OF X ARE
                                                                          163.7
C
              DESCRIBED ADDVE.
                                                                          163.8
C
                                                                           163.9
              AN INTEGER VARIABLE THAT INDICATES WHEN A IS SINGULAR.
C
                                                                          164.
C
              THE CONTENTS OF IFAIL ARE DESCRIBED ABOVE.
                                                                          164.1
C
C
                                                                           164.3
C***********************
                                                                           164.4
C
                                                                           164.5
      DOUBLE PRECISION T,S
                                                                           164.6
      INTEGER I.J.K.IP1.IP2
                                                                           164.7
      DOUBLE PRECISION W(50)
                                                                           164.8
      IFAIL = 0
                                                                           164.9
      DO 10 J = 1.N
                                                                           165.
          W(J) = X(Q(J))
                                                                           165.1
   10 CONTINUE
                                                                           165.2
C
                                                                           165.3
C
      BACKSOLVE THE LOWER TRIANGULAR SYSTEM AND INVERT THE CIAGONAL
                                                                           165.4
C
                                                                           165.5
C
                                                                           165.6
      1 = 1
                                                                           165.7
   20 IF (1 .GE. N) GO TO 60
                                                                           165.8
      IP1 = I + 1
                                                                           165.5
      IF (CHANGE(IP1) .GT. 0) GO TO 40
                                                                           166.
      IF (CHANGE(IP1) .EQ. 0001 GO TO 1000
                                                                           166.1
```

```
C
                                                                              166.2
       WE HAVE A 2 X 2 PIVOT AT STEP I
¢
                                                                            166.3
C
                                                                              166.4
                                                                              166.5
       IP2 = I + 2
                                                                              166.6
       S = W(I)
       T = W(IP1)
                                                                              166.7
       IF (IP2 .GT. N) GC TO 130
                                                                             166.8
       DO 30 J = IP2.N
                                                                             166.9
           W(J) = W(J) - (S*A(J,I) + T*A(J,IPI))
                                                                             167.
   30 CONTINUE
                                                                             167.1
  130 CONTINUE
                                                                             167.2
      w(I) = (A(IP1,IP1)*S - A(IP1,I)*T)/CHANGE(IP1)
                                                                             167.3
      W(IP1) = (-A(IP1,I)*S + A(I,I)*T)/CHANGE(IP1)
                                                                             167.4
      I = IP2
                                                                             167.5
      GO TO 20
                                                                             167.6
C
                                                                             167.7
   40 CONTINUE
                                                                             167.8
C
                                                                             167.9
C
      WE HAVE A 1 X 1 PIVOT AT STEP I
                                                                             168.
C
                                                                             168.1
      T = h(1)
                                                                             168.2
      00.50 J = IP1.N
                                                                             168.3
          T*(I,L)A - (L)W = (L)W
                                                                             168.4
   50 CONTINUE
                                                                             168.5
      IF (4(1,1) .EQ. 0.000) GO TO 1000
                                                                             168.6
      W(I) = W(I)/A(I,I)
                                                                             168.7
      I = IP1
                                                                             168.8
      GO TC 20
                                                                            168.9
C
                                                                            169.
   60 I = N
                                                                            169.1
C
                                                                            169.2
C
      INVERT THE LAST DIAGONAL BLOCK AND INITIALIZE
                                                                            169.3
C
      FOR THE FORWARD SOLUTION
                                                                            169.4
                                                                            169.5
      IF (CHANGF(1) .GT. 0.000) GC TO 65
                                                                            169.6
      IF (CHANGE(I) .5Q. 000) GO TO 1000
                                                                            169.7
                                                                            169.8
C
     THE LAST BLOCK IS 2 X 2
                                                                            169.9
C
                                                                            170.
      IT HAS ALREADY BEEN INVERTED
C
                                                                            170.1
          IP1 = I - 1
                                                                            170.2
          I = I - 2
                                                                            170.3
          GQ TO 70
                                                                            170.4
                                                                            170.5
C
   65 CONTINUE
                                                                            170.6
C
                                                                            170.7
                                                                            170.8
C
      THE LAST BLOCK IS 1 X 1
                                                                            170.9
C
          15 (A(N,N) .EQ. 0.000) GO TO 1000
                                                                            171.
          W(N) = W(N)/A(N_1N_2)
                                                                            171.1
                                                                            171.2
          IP1 = I
                                                                            171.3
               = I - 1
          Ī
                                                                            171.4
C
   70 CONTINUE
                                                                            171.5
                                                                            171.6
C
      FORWARD SOLVE THE REMAINING UPPER TRIANGULAR SYSTEM
                                                                            171.7
C
                                                                            171.8
C
      IF (I .LE. 0) GO TO 1001
                                                                            171.9
      IF (CHANGE(I) .GT. 0.000) GO TO 90
                                                                            172.
                                                                            172.1
C
                                                                            172.2
C
      2 X 2 PIVOT
                                                                            172.3
C
      IP2 = IP1
                                                                            172.4
                                                                            172.5
      IP1 = I
                                                                            172.6
          = 1 - 1
                                                                            172.7
      DO 80 J = IP2.N
          W(IP1) = W(IP1) - A(J, IP1) * W(J)
                                                                            172.8
                                                                            172.9
          h(I)
                (L)W*(I,L)A - (I)W =
                                                                            173.
   80 CONTINUE
```

```
173.1
      IP1 = I
I '= I - 1
                                                                              173.2
                                                                              173.3
      GO TO 70
                                                                              173.4
C
                                                                              173.5
C
      1 X 1 PIVOT
                                                                              173.6
                                                                              173.7
   90 DO 100 J = 1P1.N
                                                                              173.6
          (U)W*(I,U)A - (I)W = (I)W
                                                                              173.9
  100 CONTINUE
                                                                              174.
      IP1 = I
                                                                              174.1
      I = I -1
GO TO 70
                                                                              174.2
C
                                                                              174.3
                                                                              174.4
1000 CONTINUE
                                                                              174.5
                                                                              174.6
                                                                              174.7
C
      THE MATRIX IS SINGULAR
                                                                              174.€
C
      IFAIL = 1
                                                                              174.5
                                                                              175.
      PETURN
                                                                              175.1
C
1001 CONTINUE
                                                                              175.2
                                                                              175.3
C
      THIS IS THE NORMAL RETURN . . . A SOLUTION WAS FOUND
                                                                              175.4
C
                                                                              175.5
      00 110 J = 1.N
                                                                              175.6
          X(Q(J)) = X(J)
                                                                              175.7
  110 CONTINUE
                                                                              175.6
      RETURN
                                                                              175.4
      END
                                                                              176.
```

#### Acknowledgments

First of all, I wish to express my deep appreciation to

Professor James R. Bunch. He has generously given his time, energy, and

valuable advice to help me with this dissertation. He has also given me

many fine opportunities that have enriched both my personal and academic

lives. Working under his guidance has been a very rewarding experience.

I would also like to thank the other members of the doctoral committee: Professors John W. Evans, John A. Trangenstein, Walter A. Burkhard, and Michael L. Fredman. A special note of thanks goes to Dr. Jorge J. Moré for stimulating my interest in optimization and for many discussions and helpful suggestions.

There are many people who have not been directly involved in the preparation of this thesis, and yet who have influenced my thoughts. They have been my teachers along the way, and my gratitude for their gift of knowledge is endless. A few people deserve special mention. Professor John W. Evans and Professor Murray Rosenblatt at University of California, San Diego gave me the opportunity to gain computing experience by working on their research projects. Dr. Gary Leaf and Dr. Mike Minkoff provided a stimulating summer project at Argonne National Laboratory in 1975.

In addition, I would like to express my appreciation to the National Science Foundation for financial support under NSF grants MCS 76-03139 and MCS 76-17548. I also appreciate the financial support from the Applied Mathematics Division at Argonne National Laboratory.

Finally, I want to thank Ms. Judy Beumer for an excellent job of typing and for her infinite patience.

#### References

- [1] Aasen, J. O., "On the Reduction of a Symmetric Matrix to Tridiagonal Form," BIT, 11, (1971), 233-242.
- [2] Armijo, L., "Minimization of Functions Having Lipschitz Continuous First Partial Derivatives," Pac. J. Math. 16, (1966), 1-3.
- [3] Bunch, J. R., "Analysis of the Diagonal Pivoting Method," Siam J. Numer. Anal., 8, (1971), 656-680.
- [4] Bunch, J. R. and Kaufman, L., "Some Stable Methods for Calculating Inertia and Solving Symmetric Linear Systems," Math. of Comp., 31, (1977), 162-179.
- [5] Bunch, J. R. and Parlett, B. N., "Direct Methods for Solving Symmetric Indefinite Systems of Linear Equations," Siam J. Numer. Anal., 8, (1971), 639-655.
- [6] Dahlquist, G. and Björk, A., <u>Numerical Methods</u>, Prentice-Hall Inc., New Jersey, 1974.
- [7] Dennis, J. E. and Moré, J., "Quasi Newton Methods, Motivation and Theory," SIAM Review, 19, (1977), 46-89.
- [8] Fletcher, R. and Freeman, T. L., "A Modified Newton Method for Minimisation," U. of Dundee Rept. No. 7, (1975).
- [9] Fletcher, R. and Powell, M. J. D., "Modifications of LDL<sup>t</sup> Factor-izations," <u>Math. of Comp.</u>, 28, (1974), 1067-1087.
- [10] Forsythe, G. E. and Moler, B. C., Computer Solutions of Linear Algebraic Systems, Prentice-Hall, 1967.
- [11] Gill, P. E. and Murray, W., "Newton Type Methods for Unconstrained and Linearly Constrained Optimization," Math. Prog., 7, (1974), 311-350.
- [12] Gill, P. E. and Murray, W., "Safeguarded Steplength Algorithms for Optimization Using Descent Methods," NPL Rept. NAC37, (1974).
- [13] Gill, P. E., Golub, G. H., Murray, W., Saunders, M. A., "Methods for Modifying Matrix Factorizations," Math. of Comp., 28, (1974), 505-535.
- [14] Gill, P. E., Murray, W., Saunders, M. A., "Methods for Computing and Modifying the LDV Factors of a Matrix," Math. of Comp., 29, (1975), 1051-1077.

- [15] Hillstrom, K. E., "A Simulation Test Approach to the Evaluation and Comparison of Unconstrained Nonlinear Optimization Algorithms," Rep. ANL-76-20, Argonne National Laboratory, Argonne, IL, (1976).
- [16] McCormick, G., "Second Order Convergence Using a Modified Armijo Step Size Rule for Function Minimization," The George Washington University Serial T-328, (1976).
- [17] Ortega, J. M. and Rheinbolt, W. C., <u>Iterative Solution of Non-linear Equations in Several Variables</u>, Academic Press, New York, (1970).
- [18] Powell, M. J. D., "A New Algorithm for Unconstrained Optimization,"
  Nonlinear Programming, J. B. Rosen, O. L. Mangasarian and
  K. Ritter, eds., Academic Press, New York, (1970).
- [19] Stewart, G. W., <u>Introduction to Matrix Computations</u>, Academic Press, New York, 1973.
- [20] Wilkinson, J. H., <u>The Algebraic Eigenvalue Problem</u>, Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1965.

## Distribution for ANL-77-49

# Internal:

- B. Ancker-Johnson
- R. J. Royston
- P. Witkowski (10)
- C. E. Till
- D. C. Sorensen (74)
- A. B. Krisciunas
- ANL Contract Copy
- ANL Libraries (5)
- ANL TIS Files (6)

## External:

ERDA-TIC, for distribution per UC-32 (201)

Manager, Chicago Operations Office

Chief, Chicago Patent Group

President, Argonne Universities Association

Applied Mathematics Division Review Committee:

- P. J. Eberlein, SUNY at Buffalo
- G. Estrin, U. California, Los Angeles
- W. M. Gentleman, U. Waterloo
- J. M. Ortega, NASA Langley Research Center
- E. N. Pinson, Bell Telephone Labs.
- S. Rosen, Purdue U.

